





The Famous
HISTORY
O F
VALENTINE
A N D
ORSON,

The Two SONS of the
Emperor of GREECE.

The Sixteenth EDITION.

Newly Corrected and Amended; with New
CUTS, lively Expressing the HISTORY.

L O N D O N :

Printed for *A. Bettesworth* and *C. Hitch*, at the
Red Lion, and *J. Osborn*, at the *Golden Ball*,
in *Pater-Noster-Row*; and *J. Hodges*, at the
Looking Glass, on *London-Bridge*. 1736.

Just Publish'd,

*Printed for A. Bettefworth and C. Hitch in Pater-
noster-Row, and J. Hodges, on London-Bridge.*

THE Instructor: Or, Young Man's Best Companion: Containing Spelling, Reading, Writing, and Arithmetick in an easier Way than any yet published; and how to qualify any Person for Business, without the Help of a Master. Instructions to write Variety of Hands; with Copies both in Prose and Verse. How to write Letters on Business or Friendship Forms of Indentures, Bonds, Bills of Sale, Receipts, Wills, Leases, Releases, &c. Also Merchants Accompts, and a short and easy Method of Shop and Book-keeping, with a Description of the Product, Counties, and Market-Towns in *England and Wales*. Together with the Carpenter's plain and exact Rule: Shewing how to measure Carpenters, Joiners, Sawyers, Bricklayers, Plasterers, Plumbers, Masons, Glaziers, and Painters Work. How to undertake each Work, and at what Price; the Rates of each Commodity, and the common Wages of Journey-men: with Gunter's Line, and Coggeshall's Description of the Sliding Rule: Likewise the Practical Gauger made Easy; the Art of Dialling, and how to erect and fix any Dial; with Instructions for Dying, Colouring, and making Colours; and some General Observations for Gardening, every Month in the Year. *To which is added, the Families best Companion, with Instructions for Marking on Linnen; how to Pickle and Preserve; to make divers Sorts of Wines; and many excellent Plaisters and Medicines, necessary in all Families.* By George Fisher, Accountant. Price 2s. 6d.

*Where likewise to be had,*

THE SIREN: Containing a Collection of 420 of the most Celebrated *English* Songs; in a neat Pocket Volume: being the best and cheapest Book of this Kind extant. Price Bound 2s.

TO THE
R E A D E R.

AMongst many Histories, as well *Antient* as *Modern*, which have in *Former Times* borrowed our *English* Phrase to speak withal, this (gentle Reader) here of *Valentine and Orson*, Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once again Imprinted, crave a free Passage of thy Acceptance, and puts itself to the Censure of those Historiographers, who make *Invention* the eldest Daughter of the *Seven Sciences*. Therefore, considering with myself the Worthiness of the Story, with the Variety thereof, being many Years ago first written in *French* and since translated into *English*; where it hath found a favourable Welcome, as well of Superiors as Inferiors; I have now again, at my own Cost and Charge, Published it to the Eye and

To the READER.

Ear of *Such*, to be seen or heard, as take Pleasure in those kind of Writings. It is deck'd forth with many fair Models and lively Pictures, all pertinent and agreeable to the Subject of the History, which I have caused to be new cut; not only to make it carry the more Grace in Reading, but a more Lustre to *Heroick Atchievements* of Knightly Adventures: For here may the Princely Mind see his own Model; the Knightly Tilter his Martial Atchievement, and the Amorous Lady her *dulcet Passages of Love*. Here are Countries, with the Courts of Kings deciphered; the Magnitude of Honours laid open; the true Form of Turnaments describ'd; and between Knight and Knight are here most lively Combats portrayed, to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man think his Time ill spent, or his Labour lost, where the Matter affords

To the READER.

affords such Copiousness of Pleasure. The History may well bear the Title of *Courtly Contents*, for indeed it is a Garden of *Courtly Delights*, where grow Flowers of an extraordinary Savour, that gives a Scent in the Bosoms of Nobility, Ladies, Knights, and Gentlewomen : It gives also a Working to the Minds of the dull Country-Swains, and (as it were) leads them to search out for Martial Atchievements. Herein is also contained, the true Difference betwixt Art and Nature ; for in *Valentine* is comprehended the Education of *Art*, and in *Orson* the true working of *Nature*, for being both one Emperor's Sons, the one brought up in a Prince's Palace, the other among *savage Beasts*, now makes the Current pass with more Admiration to the Reader : Mark but the Carriage of the Wild *Orson*, and you shall find that

To the READER.

Nature hath a Being above *Art*, but yet *Nature* bettered by *Art*, hath a more noble Working. The History here written, was translated out of *French* into *English*, above a hundred Years ago, by one *Henry Watson*, and since that Time, it hath been by him Corrected, and put into a more easy Style, and so followed on to the Press till this present Edition, which I have here Published for thy Benefit: Therefore, Gentle Reader, accept of this my Cost and Pains, who had rather prove a Loser, than so Worthy a Story as this is should lie in Obscurity; for there are few Subjects of *Human Carriage*, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be seen into. If you desire to see the Care and Troubles of Kings, the Battles of Martial Champions; if of Courtly Turnaments and Combats of Princes; the Travels of Knightly

To the READER.

Knightly Adventures; the Sorrows of distressed Ladies. Of strange Births, and savage Educations. Of Friends long lost, and their joyful Meeting again. Of Charms and Enchantments. Of the Rewards of Traytors and Treasons. Of long Captivities and Imprisonments, *here they are*: Yea, here are all the *Varieties and Passages* that may furnish forth a History fit for a *Reader's Pleasure*; for no *unseemly Words or Speeches* are herein contained, but such as are modestly carried. Considering all which, I am now encouraged to put this old Story into a *New Livery*, and not suffer that to lie *Buried*, that a little Cost may keep *Alive*. And so, *Gentle Reader*, craving thy Acceptance, I wish *Thee* as much Pleasure in the *Reading*, as I have had in the *Translating*; and so I End.



The HISTORY of
V A L E N T I N E *and* **O R S O N**.

C H A P. I.

How King Pepin banished his Queen Bertha; and how he gave his Sister Bellifant in Marriage to Alexander, Emperor of Constantinople.



WE find it set down in antient Chronicles, that the thrice noble and valiant *Pepin*, some time King of *France*, took to Wife *Bertha*, who was descended of no less than Royal Race: This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wondrously cumbered with many Adversities and Troubles, enviously beset on each Side, which with great Patience she suffered. The chief Instrument of all this Mischief towards this good Queen, was plotted and effected by a cursed old Woman, who first of all brought her into Disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite banished his Bed, while she in a cunning manner, brought in a Daughter of her own in the good Queen's stead: This old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to effect, (for her Daughter somewhat resembled *Bertha*) it so came to pass, that King *Pepin* had two
Sons.

Sons by this Maiden, to wit, *Haufray* and *Henry*, both which Sons so grieved the King, and wasted the Country of *France* by their Outrages and Fury, that in the End they caused the Queen *Bertha* to be utterly banished, where she passed a great Part of her Days in doleful Lamentation, and abundance of Sorrow: She long endured those miserable Days of Sorrow, at last began to receive Comfort again; for it so chanced after at the earnest Request of divers great Peers and Lords of *France*, this good Queen began to find Favour with the King her Husband, (who when he knew the Treachery that wicked old Woman had plotted against her) much bewailed the Miseries she had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her Bed, in a short time conceived, and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called *Charlemain* the *Puissant*; but the King himself was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforesaid *Haufray* and *Henry*, and at last compelled by them to forsake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the ensuing History: My Purpose at this present, is to set down to the Reader, the whole Matter contained in this Book; and especially the valiant Acts and Deeds of *Valentine* and his Brother *Orson*. This King *Pepin* had a Sister named *Bellisant*, a Woman of great Wit, Beauty, and all the Endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her Brother's Love mightily to appear to all the World, by the ardent Love and Affection that

he

he bare her : It chanced so, that the Fame of this lovely Personage spread itself abroad in other Regions, that at last *Alexander*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, who was much enflamed with her Beauty, came into *France*, accompanied by a gallant Troop of his Nobility, all richly set out with all manner of Pomp belonging to so great a Prince. This Emperor shortly after his Arrival, suddenly assembled all his Lords in their rich Habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards King *Pepin's* Court; which when understood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperor's Request. King *Pepin* understanding this sudden, but joyful News, made great Preparations in his Court for entertaining of this noble Emperor : All things being in readiness, King *Pepin*, with all his Train, went to meet this Prince, whom, when they met, they entertain'd with great Joy, and conducted him to the Court of *France*, where fair *Bellisant* was, and she entertained him with no less Joy than her Brother had done before ; and there they spent their Time in Joy and Triumph.

This Marriage being once publicly known among all the Inhabitants, Joy began to shew itself on e'ery side, for such a happy Day, that such good Alliance was knit between the Emperor *Alexander*, and King *Pepin*, that Triumphs began in every Place, against the Nuptial-Day : When the time-appointed came, these two were espoused in all Honour befitting their Estates, and largeness shewed itself on every Side This Marriage-

Marriage-Feast lasted long ; but at last being ended, the Emperor (assisted by all his worthy Train) made Preparation to take leave of his new Brother-in-law, and take their way towards *Constantinople*, with his fair Empress *Bellisant* : Being all mounted on Horse-back, King *Pepin* set forward with his Brother, to bring him on his Way, attended on every side with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court, and they that could not find Legs to go, found Eyes to weep for the Departure of their fair Lady and Mistress. These mighty Princes came near to a Port of the Sea, whereas they must needs part ; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more Thanks in Tears than Words, the which I am not able to express ; but above all, the Emperor yielded King *Pepin* worthy Thanks for his quick, and generous Consent, in giving him his fair Sister *Bellisant*, and with so free a Heart to yield him good-will. At which Words of the Emperor unto King *Pepin*, the King embraced him in his Arms, saying, *Fair Sir, and my right loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your State required, nor with such Triumphs and Magnificence as became me ; but in that you have so graciously accepted my small Power. I hold myself content in that I have done, but not that I should have done ; and therefore there belongeth small Thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your Wife ; whereby (I trust) long Friendship shall be continued betwixt us : In Token whereof, I*
take

take Witnesſs of all that are here preſent, that my Body, Realm and Goods, and all the Powers that I can raſein France, to venture for your Safety and Succour all the Days of my Life. King Pepin being now departed from the Emperor, turned himſelf to his Siſter, and in this Manner takes his leave: Fair Siſter (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of France, wherein you have ſpent your Infancy, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better Conditions: Alſo, let your Behaviour be ſuch, that I, the reſt of your Friends, and the whole Company of Peers may have Honour in you. Again, as the Country where you now go is ſtrange unto you, ſo be you governed by the modeſt Ladies of the Land, and give no Ear to wicked Counſel, or to ſuch as would move you to Diſloyalty; for you are the Creature that I love the deareſt in all the World; wherefore, if I ſhould hear Tydings other than good from you, or of you, it would be the only Cauſe to take away my Life. After this, he gave to his Siſter many choice Gifts, and ſo embracing each other, with weeping Eyes, he left her to the Mercy of the Waves. The young Lady, whoſe Heart being overcharged between Joy and Fear, was not able to answer a Word; and what with Tears and Sighs, the Paſſage of her Tongue was utterly ſtopt. Then all the Lords and Ladies took their leave of each other, at which was let fall many Tears, as well on their Parts of France, as they that were to go to Conſtantinople; but eſpecially for the Departure of the fair Lady Belliſant. All Duties of Love being ended, King Pepin returned to France, and
the

the Emperor by this time being upon the Seas, had Wind and Tide at such Advantage, that within short Space, he with all his Train arrived with Safety at *Constantinop'e*; where at their landing, they were all received with great Joy, Honour and Triumph; all which were needless to recount. But mark what hapned, not long after these Joys and Triumphs were extinguished, that were made for the Lady *Bellisant*, in Place whereof, nothing but Mournings, Lamentations and Tears were placed, and all for the poor Lady, who by Treason and false Accusations, was cast out and banished, as hereafter appears more at large.

CHAP. II.

How the Arch-priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperor, his Lord and Master, in making Love to the Empress; and what evil followed thereupon. The Arch-priest having received a Repulse to save his own Honour, practis'd Treason against the Innocent Lady.

IN *Constantinople* lived an Arch-Priest, in whom the Emperor put such Trust, and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his Bosom-thoughts unto his Secrecy: And in the End made him sole Governor and Commander over all his House; he was also his principal Confessor, and one of his greatest Favourites, for which he afterwards had many a sorrowful Heart.

Heart. This Priest forgetting all the Emperor's Favours, and great Honours done unto him, being entangled with the Beauty of the new Empress, who excelled all mortal Creatures, *inordinate Lust* prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way only fit Time and Opportunity to settle this his Determination: At last, it chanced that he espied her all alone, sitting solitary in her Chamber, which the Arch-Priest well observing, he came in and sat down by her; at last he began to behold her with a smiling and jesting Countenance, of all which the Lady mistrusted nothing, for she very well knew the Amity between him and the Emperor, and his Familiarity in the House, and she never dream'd or had such a thought, that he thereby would cover such a filthy Act, as to tempt her to Dishonour, especially towards his Lord and Master, who so much esteemed him. But there is never more Danger like to ensue, as when one of the same House intendeth Treason. But at last, after many Gestures of Impurity, and sitting still by this virtuous Lady, he began to utter his *Lacivious Thoughts* in this Manner.

Right dear and Sovereign Lady, I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your Ears, but rather set them open to hear my rude Words; especially, for that I am burnt up in Affection towards your Person, and for whose Love I have suffered intolerable Torments in my Bosom: Know therefore, (my Redoubted Lady) that the Beauty of your admirable

mirable Person, and the *Supernal Form* wherein you are framed, hath even ravished my Spirits, broken my Heart, confounded my Sences, and quite bereft me of all Rest, both by Night and Day, only with doating on your Peerless Beauty. Again (fair Lady) my Meat, Drink, Manners, yea, my very Countenance; insomuch, that only my Request and Prayers unto the Gods is even this, that they would so enchant that Heart of yours, that you would at length give Consent unto me, your Vassal, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those Pleasures you are ordained unto. If, Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these my restless Thoughts, (than which nothing will sooner cut my Heart asunder) I can look for nothing but present Death, and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a denial from your fair Lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are renowned in all the Gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and also Youthful; be not then the Cause that I should hazard my Life by losing your Love, but rather grant my Desire, and thereby make me forever yours in hearty Affection. But, fair Lady, perhaps you will say, *How dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful Act?* To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon Earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my Power to absolve you of your Sins, and enjoin your Penance; which, trust me, Lady, shall fall out to be very easy, so you grant me your Love.

These

These Speeches of his being ended, the Lady, out of a grave and prudent Carriage, made unto this perjured Priest this sharp Reprimand and Answer : Ah ! Thou false, unjust, disloyal and devilish Priest, Stain to all thy Profession : How dar'st thou open thy perjured Mouth to such a Mass of Villanies, as thereon may ensue ? First, against the *sacred Order*, Secondly, but most principally, against the Majesty of that Emperor that ever nourished thee in the Bond of tender Compassion, and hath raised thee to great Dignities, far unfit for such a Devil-incarnate ; and from whom may justly proceed the Sentence of Condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should understand thy *Lascivious* and *Wicked* Practises. Thou Devil, and worse than Devil, thou that should'st be unto me Instruction, and also a Guide to my Life and Conversation ; in this thou art devising my utter Ruin and Destruction, by thy evil Desire, beyond that good Expectation which the Emperor trusted in thee : O never grant (ye Gods) that the Blood of *France*, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperor, my loving Lord, should be so dishonour'd either by me in my Body, or through my Privy in any other Manner. O false accursed Man, behold whereunto thou would'st deliver me ! First unto the utter Ruin and Spoil of mine Honour ; next, shut up my Body in unremoveable Shame forever among Men ; and lastly, bring my Soul into the Jaw of *Death* and the *Devil*. Let fall all these thy vile and devilish Provocations to

Lust.

Lust, and leave forever after to sollicite me, or any other *Virtuous Creature* in this Manner ; which if thou further prosecute unto me, thou can'st look for nothing but a shameful *Downfall*, and a most ignominious *Death*, therefore with this Answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

This angry Farewel of the worthy Empress, stung the Priest to the very Heart ; but at that Time durst make no further Reply unto the fair Lady concerning Love ; but as a Man all compos'd of Rage and Fury, he then departed, discontent at this most unfortunate and unhappy Chance. At last, when he could hold no longer, he excus'd himself unto the Lady, craving Pardon for these his bold, sawcy, and rash Follies committed, but yet could find no Remedy to restore his Honour. Thus being fore troubled in Mind, divers and sundry Ways he resolv'd upon to revenge himself upon this Innocent, which he accordingly affected by Treason against this Lady : And seeing the Emperor knew nothing in this Matter from the Empress *Bellisant*, how the Arch-Priest would have enticed her to Dishonour, and have drawn her to Disloyalty to the Emperor, but he could not ; therefore he began to accuse her to the Emperor for divers Crimes. The Arch-Priest having now begun to set abroad his devilish Practices, began to think how he might effect what he had determin'd, and also preserve the Reputation of the former Honours which the Emperor had bestow'd upon him ; whereupon at last he resolv'd

solved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Diffimulation, bear fair Weather towards the Emperor, as also seemed to shew how great Care he had of his Preservation, and to make known his Loyalty and watchful Care he had towards the Welfare of his Estate and Person: So it befel, that on a Day when he espied a fit Opportunity, and finding the Emperor all alone, he thus accosted him:

Right High and Mighty Emperor, and my noble Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount and highly esteem the innumerable Favours, and great Kindness which i have always received from your mighty Highness: Wherefore, as *Duty* doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the Passages of your Estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; but especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all others: Therefore, it is my Duty, to reveal unto you all those Carriages that any Way concerns your Royal Person, wherefore I beseech your Highness to give Ear to what I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the Torments of Death, than to hide any thing from you; and the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your Person and Honour: O Emperor! thus it is, *Bellisant*, your Wife and Sister to the King of *France*, whom you have advanced to this State and Dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her Dread Lord; for she wandreth in her Love, and giveth that unto another which is proper

proper only to your Self: To name the Person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a *Sacred Priest*, and may not seek the Blood of any Man; but yet, know for certain, that by the way of Confession I come unto the Light thereof, yet I neither ought nor will reveal the Name of him that thus usurps your Bed: But let it suffice, there is not a more unclean and lascivious Woman liveth in your Court or Kingdom; whereby your Life is in Danger, your Honour defam'd, and my Duty towards you approved by what I have told you. My Advice therefore is, to be wary of your Person, and correct this her Folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the Preservation of your Honour: For will it not be a great Shame among the Princes of the Earth, that you, having taking a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her Beauty is incomparable, her Wisdom is not to be parallell'd by any Lady on Earth; and she to prove a *Whore*? and what is worse, one who daily desireth your Death; which grieves my Heart to think on it.

The Emperor having heard this long Accusation, little mistrusted the Treachery of the Arch-Priest, and gave Credit to all his fair but false Words, and therewith became extream pensive and sad, that his Trust in her beautiful Love, had been thus decieved. At last, having spent many Days in uttering forth many discontented Gestures, Words and Sighs, and many grievous Acclamations, even in the Imperial Palace, he gave Rest a while to his discontented

ted Passions : But wakened Revenge to wait for a fitter Opportunity : And upon a Day, entering into the Chamber of *Bellisant*, and without speaking to her one Word, in a most fierce, rude and unmannerly Order, took his Lady by the Hair of her Head, and dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the Ground in such a horrid Manner, that the Blood besmeared her Face in a most inhumane Sort. She receiving from her Lord such unlook'd-for Welcome, cried out in a lamentable Manner, and as well as she was able began to say. *Aa's !* (*my dear Lord*) *what moveth you to this unwelcome Outrage ; I call the Gods to witness, I never did anything in my Life, either against your Honour or Life, or ever prostituted my Body to any Strangers Love.* The Emperor not being satisfied, replied, thou Whore, I am too well informed of thy Proceedings ; and cursed be the Day and Hour that ever I saw thy deceivable Face, and therewithal, without Pity, dashed her Head against the Ground, leaving her speechless, inso-much that all the Damsels, her Attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of Life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court a most pitiful Outcry, which the Councillors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, where they found this Lady in a Trance ; at which Disaster all were amazed, some ran to take up the Dead Body of the Empress, others took upon them to speak to the Emperor, thereby to stay the Fury of this undeserved Rage, whose Words unto him were as followeth :

followeth : Alas ! (dread Sovereign) what may be the Cause of this your sudden Passion, in delivering into Danger of *Death*, so modest, chaste, and noble a Lady ? A Lady so beloved of all Degrees, and in whom was never seen the least Spark of Dishonour, neither towards you, or any in this Empire : Wherefore our Request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong-conceiv'd Anger against this harmless Lady. the Emperor not at all relenting, answered, *Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear how cunningly she hath deluded me ; therefore move me no further, for I am fully propos'd to deliver her over to Death ; and he who shall hereunto gainsay, shall be a Partaker in Death with this wicked Strumpet.* These Words were no sooner uttered, but up rose a worthy, wise, couragious and bold Baron, who spake to the Emperor after this Manner : *Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advis'd before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused Wife, Sister to a great King, namely, the King of France ; who when he hears of this great Wrong done unto her, will out of a couragious Heart, and a Brotherly Affection, muster up all his Men of War, and suddenly surprize all our Towns, Wives and Children, forgetting Mercy, and only pursuing Revenge upon us for these merciless and cruel Deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other Side, the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and Wound her in this Manner, wherein you have proceed'd against her.* The worthy Baron having thus ended his Advice, the Lady suddenly

denly fell upon her Knees before the Emperor, and in Tears very submissive and lamentable, thus she spoke. :

Alas! (my Lord) take Pity on an Innocent Lady, for I am free from any evil Act, nor I never thought any Evil against your Person or Dignity: At least, my Lord, if your Compassion be quite extinct from pittying me, yet pity the Fruit of my Body, for I am great with Child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful Delivery. If nothing can appease your Anger towards me, then let my Body be imprisoned in some strong Tower till the Time of my Delivery, and then do with my Body as you please, so the Fruit of my Body may be kept safe. In this dolorous Passion she proceeded so far, that what with her Sighs and Tears following one another, it would have grieved the stoniest Heart that ever rested in the Bosom of the vilest Tyrant that ever reigned. All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and traiterous Accusations of the Arch-Priest, that all Lenity set apart, he burst out in this Manner: Thou false Strumpet, the Child thou goest withal is to me no Joy, but rather Dishonour; for thy Disloyalty hath made such a Separation between us, that nothing thy dissolute Life, thou hast made another Partner in my Love. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the Rage of the Emperor, by a common Consent removed her out of his Presence into another Chamber, shewing

shewing unto her all the Favour they could, both in Action and Gesture, although her fair Face was sore deformed and besmeared with Blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were her Attendants fetched Water to wash her Face, and did all they could to revive her dying Spirits. Being thus in another Chamber, in comes *Blandiman* her 'Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured Manner, for very Pity the Water trickled down his Cheeks, and at last began his Speech in this Manner : *Ah! Madam, I plainly see that You are traiterously banded, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant Curses upon that Person that hath been the Cause of all your Miseries : But, gentle Lady, take Comfort unto You, and trust me, if You will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again to France, to the King your Brother, who gave me and my Service unto You, to attend You in all Misfortunes ; all which I will, to the utmost of my Power, undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my Counsel, and free Yourself out of Danger ; for be assured, that if here you stay, the Emperor will prosecute Revenge upon you, and in the End bring You to a shameful Death.* Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this Reply : *Ah! Blandiman, I know thy faithful Service towards me ; but yet, if I should follow thy Advice, and steal out of this Country secretly, it would make me seem guilty of all that the Emperor throweth upon me, and thereby yield me Guilty of the Deed. Believe me, Blandiman, I had rather die all the Deaths the World can put upon me, than to bear the Blame of that, wherein I am Innocent.*

B

By

By this Time the Emperor's Choler was somewhat pacified, by Means of his Lords and Barons that attended ; insomuch that he caused *Bellisant* to be quickly brought before him ; when she was come, his Heart trembled and fretted for very Anger that he durst not put her to Death, fearing the great Puissance and Might of her Brother, King *Pepin* ; and therefore burst forth into these Speeches : Thou false and accursed Woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in Question : I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brother's Sake, the Valiant *Pepin*, King of *France*, I would make thee Fry in the Fire, as an Example to all fair Ladies ; but, for his Sake, I spare thy Life ; stand forth and hear thy Judgment. I Banish thee out of my Conuntry and Empire ; expressly commanding, that without any Delay, to-morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer Death in all Extremity. Also, I charge and command, that none of my Country dare be so bold as to give Aid, or accompany You, save only Your Servant *Blandiman*, whom You brought with You out of *France*. Go, get thee presently out of my Sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in my Bosom. The Emperor having pronounced Sentence against her, the Empreiss *Bellisant*, accompanied with her Servant *Blandiman*, speedily hasted to Horse. Being thus mounted, and then passing thro' the fair City towards one of the Gates thereof, there met her a great Multitude of People, of all Degrees,
much

much lamenting the Loss of so fair a Lady, and so so good an Empress. When she came to the utmost Part, even ready to go out of the Gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable Howling of mournful Voices, that the like before was never heard in the City of *Constantinople*. When she was out of the Walls of the City, and just entred into the wide Fields, she began to fall into a Womanly Fit of bitter Weeping, to see how shameful and dishonourable she was used, she being *Innocent*: Again, to think upon her Birth, and the Imperial Dignity from whence she was fallen, as also to account the Misfortune wherein she was like to finish the rest of her Days; it drove her at last from Tears to utter her Grievs in these Words: Alas! In what unhappy Hour was I born, to fall from so high an Estate to so low an Object of Poverty as I am now in? Woe is me, the unhappiest amongst Women, now are all my Joys turned topsie-turvy, my Laughter is turned into Weeping, my Songs converted into Sighs; instead of Cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all Manner of mean Attire; my Precious Stones of inestimable Value are all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand all over my Garments. O ye Fields and Woods, to you I make my Moan; for other Company I have none, consider my Exile, and help to bewail my Misfortune: O would the Gods had pittied my Distress, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had not Fortune given me so foul

a Fall ; at least, my poor Estate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beautiful Sun send forth his Beams on a Wretch so miserable? Why doth the Earth bear such a Creature, that is composed of Calamities? O wretched Man, (whosoever thou art) that by thy wicked Treason hath brought me to this Down-fall ; I may well curse thee with Bitterness of Heart, by him alone am I made thus Unfortunate. Ah ! my Brother, what should thou do with such a woful Wight to thy Sister ? It had been better I had never been born, than that I should prove such a Stain to thy *Princely Family*. As she was thus complaining to her sacred Heart, the Anguish thereof threw her into a Swoond as she sat on Horseback, and was like at that Instant to have fallen off her Horse, e'er her Servant could alight and recover her ; but he used all the speediest Means for her Recovery ; at last, she coming to herself again, he said unto her, *Alas, Madam, be not discom-forted, neither let Despair so far sieze upon you, but trust to the Gods, who will keep and defend you ; for they are ready to aid and assist the Innocent.* Having thus spoken, he suddenly espy'd a Fountain, towards which, he and his Lady took their Way, and being come thereunto, he sat her down thereby, to ease and refresh her over-tired Senses. Here at this Spring leave we the Lady and her 'Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-Priest, who was the Cause of all these treachreous and evil Practices.

C H A P. III.

How the Arch-Priest put on the Habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress Bellisant. How Bellisant, in her Banishment was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine and Orson, and how she lost them.

THE Arch-Priest having now wrought the Banishment of fair *Bellisant*, thought now with himself he should surely accomplish his Desire ; wherefore in all Hast, he changed his White Rocket into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto him a Sword ; and being thus accoutred, he presently mounted on a Milk-white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all *Constantinop'le* : Being thus mounted, he rode after her with all Expedition, enquiring of all he met, which Way the Lady *Bellisant* was taken, who gladly told him which Way she had passed. After a few Hours Riding, at last he came to a spacious Forest and very long, taking the direct Way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding along, casting his Eye aside, he spied the Lady with her Servant *Blandiman*, sitting by a Fountain full of Heavineis, lamenting her miserable Fortunes ; *Blandiman* using all the Means he could to comfort her. Now this false Priest perceived it to be the Lady, but by Reason of his Disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest, her Enemy, but coming nearer her, she soon descry'd him,

and being struck with a sudden Fear, spake to her Servant thus: *Alas*, quoth she, *I well perceive this to be the false Arch-Priest that's coming towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he come to do me further Villany.* Lady, (said Blandiman) banish Fear, for if he come after us to do you further Harm, I will encounter him Body to Body, as long as Life lasteth. By this Time that they had ended their Speech to each other, the Arch-Priest was ready to alight off his Horse to salute the Lady with a courteous Behaviour; and after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this Manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late honoured Empress, since thy Case is so pitiful, as to suffer Banishment by Sentance given against thee by the Emperor, know this, that if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy Favour, and to grant me what I have long sought at thy Hands; I will bring it to pass that the Emperor shall again recal thy Banishment, and make thy Greatness shine more bright than ever. Therefore consider with yourself; for I protest, what I offer to you is only tending to your Advancement. *Ab!* quoth the Lady, *thou disloyal and traiterous Adversary, it is only thou that hast wrought my Overthrow, and makest me spend the Remainder of my Days in more Misery than any Lady is able to endure.* Lady (quoth he) utter not such Curses against me, for I am not come to vex or trouble you, but to heap upon you more Joys than ever you

as yet in all your Life enjoyed. And in speaking these Words, he bended his Body to the Lady, thinking to have kissed her ; but *Blandiman* peceiving his Intent, suddenly started between them, and gave the Arch-Priest such a Stroak, that he fell'd him to the Earth, and with the Violence of the Blow, broke out one of his Teeth : The Priest had no sooner recovered himself, but suddenly took to his Sword, which *Blandiman* perceiving, took a Glave that he had about him ; whereupon grew a fore and dangerous Fight between them : This Encounter lasted so long, that they were both much wounded, but still they continued fighting, till at last it chanced that a Merchant came by that Way, who perceiving afar off their fierce Encounter, cry'd out with a loud Voice in this Manner : Lords (quoth he) leave off, and shew the Cause of this your Variance, and I will endeavour to end this Controversy. Sir, quoth *Blandiman*, let us first try our Right by our Weapons, and afterwards we will be ruled by Words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear Silence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth : *A'as!* quoth she, Sir, if you ever pittied Woman, pity my Case ; for this Man whom you see armed, is the false and traiterous Arch-Priest, that hath followed me to rob me of my Honour, and force me to his wicked and unsatiable Lust ; also, this is he that hath made this Separation between me and the Emperor, my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable Tale, pittied her Misery, and began thus unto the Arch-Priest ; leave

off your Enterprize, and dare not so much as this Innocent Lady ; for if the Emperor did but understand this Villany, he would soon end thy Life in Infamy, as thou well deserveest. As soon as the Arch-Priest had heard what the Merchant said, he forsook his Combat, and fled as fast as he could through the Wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his Purpose towards the Lady ; but though he conveyed his Body out of Sight, yet his Villanies were afterward disclosed. After his Departure, the Lady was forced to stay in the Wood, all sorrowful with her wounded Servant. The Merchant staid with them a little Time, bewailing the hard Hap of the Lady ; yet comforted her, saying, *Alas ! fair Lady, I see that this Arch-Priest hath falsely betrayed you, and brought you in Hatred with the Emperor ; but I promise you, that if I live, I will reveal all these Treacheries to the Emperor, and bring the Traitor to a shameful Death ; and so I commend you to the Gods ; wishing that in those Extremities you would be patient, and comfort yourself in all these Sorrows :* So with many Thanks for his Aid from *Blandiman*, he departed. The Merchant having left them, *Blandiman* set the Lady upon her Horse, and himself on his, so riding together, they came to an Inn, where they took Lodging, and staid their Eight Days, during which Time her Servant was recovered of his Wounds, and then set forwards towards *France* ; the Lady still sorrowful and complaining in this Manner : *Alas ! Blandiman, what may my Brother and the*
Peers

Peers of France think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonourable Deed; and as a common Harlot, banished from the Emperor of Constantinople? Alas! I am persuaded that the King, my Brother, will believe that I am guilty of the Deed, and in his Anger deliver me over to a shameful Death. Lady (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your Injury, and send it Home upon the Offenders Head. During the Time of these Discourses, they had passed many Countries and Regions, till at last they came into France, and passing by Orleans, they took their Way towards Paris, where King Pepin then resided. So entering into a Forest near unto Orleans, there hapned new Miseries unto this Empress, of which more hereafter ensueth.

Bellisant (as you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forest; the Time of her Delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begin to complain to her Servant in this Manner: Alas! quoth she, Help, Help I say to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make Hast and send me the Help of Women, where-soever thou canst get any, for I can go no farther, my Pains so much encreaseth upon me. *Blandiman*, her Servant, did as she commanded, but fearing he should not find the Place again, he set a special Mark, that he might come the readier to her; and so taking his Horse, he rode forth swiftly to seek some Women to help this

this distressed Lady. He being gone, the Lady was left comfortless all alone without Succour of any Creature, so that at last she was delivered of Two fair Sons in this desolate Forest: These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh Misery, worse than all the rest that she had endured, happened to this Lady; for as she lay upon the Earth under the Tree, and her Two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear, most terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great Pace hastened into the thickest Part of



the Forest: This strange and unlook'd-for Accident frightened the distressed Lady to the Soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting up
on

on her Hands and Feet, to hasten after the Bear, which was quickly got out of her Sight. But alas, it little availed her to make any further Pursuit, for she never came to the Sight of the Child, till by Miracle it was at length disclosed: But the Lady wandered so long up and down from Place to Place, weeping and crying out for her Child, and being over-wearied with Travail, she fell into a great Sickness, insomuch that she was thereby near deprived of her Life, and immediately fell into a Swoond upon the cold Earth, as if she had yielded up the Ghost. In this Extasie, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child, whom she left under the Tree.

It hapned the same Day, that her Brother, King *Pepin*, had taken his Journey from *Paris*, (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons) towards *Constantinople*, to visit his Sister *Bellisant*; and passing through *Orleans*, he made such Haste, that he entred into the same Forest, whereas his banished Sister was lately delivered of her Two Children, but knew not what had hapned. Now as the King passed through this Forest, he espied, lying under a Tree alone, the other Son of *Bellisant*, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants: My Lords, by the Appointment of the Gods, see, I have here found a fair Encounter, even a Child. By the Gods (said they) you say Truth. Well, said the King, take it up, and it shall be brought up at my Charge, neither shall it want for any Attendance, but be used as if it were my own: And
it

if it lives until it comes to Man's Estate, I will endow it with Lands and Possessions after the most noblest Manner. And therewith, calling one of his 'Squires, he gave him the whole Care thereof, saying, *here, take thou this Infant, carry it to Orleans, see it baptized, provide a good Nurse for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto.* The King little suspecting the Child was his Nephew, the 'Squire did as the King had commanded him, and carried the Child to Orleans, caused it to be baptized, and gave it his own Name, called *Valentine*. This done, the King proceeded on his Journey towards Constantinople, to see his lovely and beauteous Sister *Bellissant*; but e'er he could pass through the Forest, he chanced to meet with *Blandiman*, accompanied with a Woman that he had got to assist his Lady in her great Extremity of Child-Birth. *Blandiman* espying the King, knew him, and hastily alighted from his Horse, doing his Duty to him: The King perceiving it to be *Blandiman*, said, *What News from Constantinople? And above the rest, how doth our Sister Bellissant?* *Blandiman* answered, *Most Gracious Sovereign, I bring you but little Tydings, yet those I do bring are sharp and bitter; for among the rest, I must tell you strange News of your loving Sister, and how she fares; and so it is, that by Force of Treason, and false Suggestion of the curst Arch-Priest of Constantinople, your Sister is banished out of the Emperor's Court and Dominions; and but for the great Mercy of the Emperor's Court, and others, she had been publickly put to Death, by being burnt*

burnt to *Ashes in the Sight of all the People*. King Pepin having heard *Blandiman's* lamentable Relation, he was exceeding outrageous and fierce in Anger, yet sorrowful withal, broke out in bitter Speeches against her, in this Manner : *Now, by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in sparing the Life of my Sister ; for I swear, that if I had her now in my Possession, I would not rest, till by Death I had made her an Example to all fair Ladies, while the World endureth.* And therewithal, commanded all his Train to stay their Journey, and return back again to *Paris* : For the grievous Offences of my Sister, stays my Journey ; and so he departed, without asking any more Questions, but turning his Horse's Head, Sorrow overcame his Courage, and at last made him break forth into these Words : *Ha ! quoth he, how many Men are deceived in Women ? Now am I utterly prevented of all my Purposes, for my only Hope rested in the Modesty of my Sister Bellifant, yea, and in her stood all my Joys and Pleasure : Again, to have had Alexander still my Brother, and Friend at all Attacks ; but now behold, by her I am disappointed, defamed, and shut out into eternal Dishonour.* And so with a heavy Heart he returned towards *Orleans*. When *Blandiman* perceived the Courage of the King to be thus-daunted, he durst relate no farther News of the Lady *Bellifant* ; but leaving the King, took his Way towards the Tree where he lately left her in great Pain of Child-birth : Being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no Tydings

Tydings of her ; wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not which Way to take. Being in a Surprize, at last he tyed his Horse to a Thorn Tree, and began to make a closer Search than before ; wherein he was so vigilant, that at last he espyed her lying flat upon the Earth, in a manner speechless, for Grief that she had lost her Child, which the Bear had taken away. *Blandiman* being glad that he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his Arms from the cold Earth, set her upon her Feet, and began thus unto her : *Alas ! (dear Lady and Mistress) how happened you to stray so far from the Place I left you in ?*

The Lady looking upon him with a ghastly Countenance, replied thus. *Ah, Blandiman ! My Distresses daily increase upon me ; for you was no sooner gone to get me some Help of Women-kind, but I was delivered of two Babes, when a ravenous Bear from the Forest assailed me, and bare one of them away : I, although weak, making what Shift I was able, followed the ravenous Beast, thinking to have recovered my Loss, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor, for want of Strength, recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. Lady, quoth he, the other Infant ; why, I myself but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there was no Infant there. How (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree ? With these Words she was so inwardly wounded, that she fell down in a Swoond ; which *Blandiman* espying, he fell into brinish Tears for Sorrow, to see his Lady so plunged and*

over-

overwhelmed, and at last led her towards the Tree, where she had left the Child ; but when she saw the other Child was gone, who can express the Grief this Lady endured ; and in the midst of her Sorrows she thus spake : Alas, *quoth she*, can there be in the World a more desolate Wretch ? on every Side encompassed with Grief, and unsupportable Sorrows. But alas, Emperor, thou art the Cause, and hast been the only Means to deliver me over to Death, and that wrongfully, and only by evil Counsel hast bereft me of thy Company ; but I call all the Gods to witness, that I was never faulty to thee in my Body, nor disobedient to thee in any Point ; wherefore, once again I am forced to cry out for Vengeance upon the Offender's Head : First, for my Disgrace ; next for my Banishment ; and lastly, for the Loss of my two Babes issued from the Blood-royal of the Emperor of *Constantinople*. But seeing all these Miseries are like to lay upon my Heart, come Death, and finish my Sorrows. All this while *Blandiman* was Ear-witness of all these piteous Complaints, insomuch that he grew weary of her Wailing, and in the best Manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by intreating her, that she would give over Moans, and betake herself to her Feet : Whereupon she gave Consent, and he, with a Woman he had brought with him, came into a neighbouring Village, where they lodged and nourished her, till she had partly recovered her Strength, and in some Measure forgotten the Depth of her Miseries.

Then

Then *Blandiman* began to tell his Lady the following Relation : *Most honoured Lady, it was my Chance (in looking you in the Woods) to meet with your Brother, King Pepin, who demanded of me what Tydings ? But his Brows were bent, and full of Anger against you ; wherefore my Advice is, that you make not towards him, for by that Countenance I well perceive, you will have but slender Welcome : For upon further Questions demanded, and answered, as soon as he heard that the Emperor had exiled you, he gave Credit that yours was the Fault ; and therefore he lays all the Blame on you. O ! (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to pass ; and I well perceive that I am beset with Adversaries on every Side : Well, be it as it may be ; the Emperor hath exiled me without Cause : What then shall I do ? I will never return again to Paris, but take my Way into some remote Land, where my Body with my Faults shall be smothered ; for my Brother's Anger is grown so great, that he would willingly deliver me over to Death ; therefore it is better to fly and save my Life, than fall into the Hands of an angry Brother. This doleful Speech she delivered in Tears ; which *Blandiman* perceiving, said, *Lady, leave off your Tears, for be assured of my faithful Fidelity ; and here I offer myself, Life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange Adventure ; and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future Dangers : Where now we shall*
leave*

leave them with sorrowful Hearts, and return again to speak something of the Bear, that carried away one of the Children.

C H A P. IV.

Of the BEAR that took away one of the Children.

NOW the Bear (as you heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no Violence, but bore it unto her Cave, which was dark and obscure : In this Cave the old Bear had four young Ones, amongst whom she laid the Child to be devoured, but mark what happened, and you'll find it strange ; for all this while the young Bears did it no Harm, but with their rough Paws stroaked it softly. The old Bear perceiving they did not devour it, shewed a bearish Kind of Favour towards it ; insomuch, that she kept it, and gave it suck among her young Ones, the Space of a Year. This Child, by Reason of the Nourishment it received, became rough all over like a Beast ; and as he grew in Strength, began to range up and down the Woods, and when he met with other Beasts, would smite them, and got such Mastery over them, that they began to shun the Place wherein he came, he was so extream fierce against them : And in this beast-like Life, he passeth the Term of fifteen Years, growing up to such Strength, that scarce any Man or Beast dare stir abroad, fearing to fall into his Hands, lest he should put them

them to Death. His Name was called ORSON, because a Bear had been his Nurse, and also was grown rough like a Bear. This Bear-man lived so long in the Forest, that none durst abide his Presence: The Renown of this wild Man grew so great, and spread so far abroad, over all the Realm of *France*, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not; for he feared no Weapons, but passed through them all, snapping them in Pieces. All this Time he abode in the Forest, he neither wore Garment, or had any Kind of Speech.

Here we leave the Wild-man in the Forest, and relate what became of the Lady *Bellissant*, and her Servant *Blandiman*; who was travelling through divers Lands and Countries; the Lady always bearing in her Mind the Loss of her two Children; wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in Safety. But in the midst of her Sorrows, passing on their weary Journey, sometimes by Sea, sometimes by Land, till at length they came to a Port in *Portugal*, where stood an invincible Castle, kept by a Giant, called *Ferragus*, so great, and of Puissance, that there was not a Horse to be found that could bear the living Trunk of this Giant. It happened so at this Castle, that every Ship that passed by this Port, was to pay Tribute to this Giant, which he himself came daily aboard to receive. At length he came into the Ship, wherein the Lady *Bellissant* and her Squire was, (for she was laden with all rich Merchandize)

fo

so casting his Eyes about, he espied *Bellifant*, whom he kindly took by the Hand, and led her into the Castle to his Wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady) *Blandiman* also followed his Lady, fearing the Giant ; but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any Violence, but presented her to his Wife, who



gladly received her, and was joyful at the Sight of so beautiful a Lady. The Giant having charged his Wife to use her and *Blandiman* honourably. During her Abode in the Castle, she would often shed Tears, when she thought of the Loss of her two Children ; which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best Manner she could, and ever placed

placed her near her own Person, for she took great Delight in her Company. Within this Castle she tarried a long Time, and here we must leave her, and return back again to tell you something of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and the false Arch-priest.

C H A P. V.

How, by the Counsel of the Arch-priest, new Customs and Taxations were raised in the City of Constantinople; and how the Treason came to light. How the Emperor, by the Advice of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin, to see the Combat fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant.

THE Emperor having shamefully expelled *Bellisant* his Wife, oftentimes repenting him of the Fact: But by the cursed Counsel of the Arch-priest, to whose Words he gave such Credit, that whatever he spoke, was as an Oracle in his Ears; insomuch, that he continually heaped new Honours on him, advancing him above the highest in the Empire; and whatsoever he commanded was affected. At last, having gotten all Power and Authority in his Hands, he began to enhance the Customs and Taxes of the City of *Constantinople*; which Exaction of his, against all Reason, struck to the very Hearts of the Inhabitants. Among these his forced Impositions (it happened, that according to their yearly Customs) their was held a great Mart in the City, which falls out about
the

the Month of *September* : Hereunto resorted many People for divers Occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair, or Mart-Day being come, the Emperor gave the Charge thereof to this Arch-priest, who accordingly provided two hundred armed Men to guard his own Person : Being thus accompanied, he took his Way into the City, to effect this new Charge which the Emperor had bestowed upon him. Now it chanced, that among the rest of those that sold Wares, the Merchant was one (of whom you heard before) that came riding by the Way, where *Blandiman* and the Arch-priest were a fighting. The Arch-priest seeing the Merchant, presently knew him, but took no Notice of him, for he was very fearful, least all his Villany should come to light. The Presence of the Merchant much troubled the Arch-priest, insomuch, that he wished his Death, and would certainly have effected the same, by the Authority that he now had in his Hands ; but still he feared some great Tumult would arise thereby. But mark what followed : The Merchant, among the rest, was furnished with costly Wares, as Cloath of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money than any five Merchants beside : The Fair being ended, the Arch-priest sent forth his Officers to demand and receive his accustomed Duties, due upon the Sale of those Merchandizes : One Officer came unto this Merchant, and said, *Sir, you must pay ten Pence for every Pound that you have taken, for so it is ordered by the*
great

great Officer to whom it belongs. The Merchant hereat being angry, said, *Cursed be that disloyal Arch-priest, for he is the only Cause of these new-raised Exactions : It had been better for us, if he had long since had his Desert, and with Shame and Infamy had ended his Days.* At which reproachful Words against the Arch-priest, the Officer took his Staff, and smote the Merchant on the Head, that presently the Blood gushed out : The Merchant feeling the Blood run about his Ears, drew his Sword, and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his Feet for dead. Upon this, there arose a great Outcry throughout the Fair, insomuch, that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant, and brought him before the Arch-priest : The Arch-priest glad of this Opportunity, would suddenly have put him to Death ; but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his Cause tryed by Law. The Arch-priest fearing the People, sent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could satisfie him but his Life : But in seeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchased his own Death, as hereafter followeth : The Merchant was brought into the Emperor's Palace, where he in Person sat as Judge. The Emperor being set, the Arch-priest brought his Advocate to plead his Cause, which was to this Effect : That the Merchant had committed Murther ; and also had spoken opprobrious Words against the said Arch-priest. The Advocate having ended his Accusation, the Merchant fell on his Knees before the Emperor,

ror, and said, Most excellent Prince, I hope out of your Goodness, that you will give me Audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a Matter of so great Importance, that it touches your Person, even in the highest Degree of Treason. Say on, *said the Emperor*,. Then mighty Emperor, and all ye Lords, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about your Palace, that none depart from this Place. The Emperor did as he requested. Then said the Merchant with a loud Voice,

*Hear all ye Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the Honour of the Emperor, and the triumphant Reign of his Person, attend my Words : The Time is come that the Treason of the cursed Arch-Priest will now be revealed, and come tonight : Then thus great Emperor, this is that cursed Man, whom you have ever nourished, and brought to great Honour, who hath deceived your Trust ; for it is he that hath wrought all the Discord betwixt you and your Virtuous Lady, whom you have banished, both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more Dishonour, than ever he received Honour from you : For it had been his Part most of any, to have advanced your Renown, and preferred your Honour ; but contrary he hath made my dread Lord infamous, by these his wicked Projects, and brought upon you great Scandal among all Nations ; for he secretly, and underhand, made Love to the Empress, but she denied him ; which he perceiving, that there was no Way to accomplish his Desire, it drove him into a thousand Fears, least
this*

this his disloyal Act shou'd come to light ; and thus devised to fa'sify unto your Ears, her faithless Love unto your Bed : Of all which his false Accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons, that he lieth like a Traitor, and for the more Approbation of what I have said, I will here unfold the Truth of what my Eyes were Witnesses : It so happened on a Day, after the Banishment of the Empress, as I was riding about my Affairs, I chanced to travel through a Wood ; at last, passing along the Way, I espyed this treacherous Priest, transformed out of the Habit of his Priest-hood, into the Shape of a Knight, armed at all Points ready for Combat with the Enemy. Drawing nearer, I beheld him in Fight with another Man unarmed, which at last I found to be *Blandiman*, 'Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in her Exile. I perceiving they encountred one another so fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their Fight ; but they little regarded what I said. Then I perceived the Lady piteously weeping, at last she said unto me thus : Gentle Merchant, and kind Friend, lend me thy Aid against this treacherous Arch-priest, that seeketh by Force to rob me of mine Honour. This is he, and only he, by whom I am banished from my Emperor's Bed and Country. With that I put Spurs to my Horse, and ran between them, to seperate them ; which the Arch-priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being fully assured I had the Knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my Part to have
revealed

revealed this long before, but durst not open my Mouth unto you, for fear his Greatness would have outswayed my Truth, and so have brought myself to an untimely Death.

The Emperor having heard this Tale, figh-
ed, and at last fell into Tears, and turning to
the Arch-priest, he said, Ah! thou false Ser-
vant, have I ever studied to do thee Honour,
and exalt thee to high Dignities, and hast thou
requited all my Love and Trust with Disloyalty
and Treasons? Well, I have now seen what I
always mistrusted, thou hast made me, of all
Men most unhappy; but it is not so much thy
Fault, as mine own; thy Treason hath bewitch-
ed me: In an evil Hour I gave Credit to thy
false Tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the
Brand of my own Folly. The Arch-priest
hearing the King thus exasperated, began to
entreat his Highness not to be so impatient,
neither to give Credit to this slanderous Tale,
that the Merchant had said against him: For
(quoth he) he belyeth me; and I am no way
Guilty of that which he accuseth me. Thou
lyest falsely, *quoth the Merchant*, thou canst not
excuse thyself in what I have charged thee
withal: And if thou still deny it, I challenge
thee by a single Combat, to maintain the Truth;
and hereunto I throw down my Gage, and ven-
ture my Life to make good what I have here
spoken. The Emperor seeing the Merchant
so resolute, to stand to the Tryal of the Com-
bat, he said, Arch-priest, it is Time that thou
either acquit thyself, by answering this Chal-
C lenge

lenge, or to yield thyself Guilty of what hath been laid to thy Charge. The Arch-priest reply'd, Mighty Emperor, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchant's Challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my Place and Calling, for I am a Sacred Prelate of the *Church*, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay, quoth the Emperor, in this Case, no Excuse is to be admitted; but you must either fight, or yield yourself a Traitor to our Crown and Dignity. At these Words the Arch-priest was somewhat troubled in Mind, yet at last, he was fain to accept of the Combat, because the Emperor charged him so deeply: So the Emperor commanded them both to safe Keeping, till such Time he had sent Letters to King *Pepin* of *France*; but in the End the Traitor had his Desert, as hereafter followeth.

The Day of Combat being appointed, and the Field prepared, Tydings came to the Emperor, that King *Pepin* was come to *Rome*, to the Aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the Grave Counsel of the Lords, dispatched Embassadors thither, with Orders to bring King *Pepin* to *Constantinople*, meaning thereby to make him an Eye-witness of these Contentions, and of the cause of this Combat, which was to prove the Arch-priest a Traitor, and to hold the Emperor excused, in that he had, by his false Accusations banished his Empress. The Embassadors thus dispatched, after a long Journey, at last they came to *ROME*, where they found

Pepin

Pepin, as before was told them. King *Pepin* hearing they were come, gave them Entertainment according to their several Degrees ; all which being done, the Embassadors thus spake : Great Lord, we present these Letters from *Alexander*, your Brother, Emperor of *Constantinople*, our Lord and Master, of which we intreat a speedy Answer. King *Pepin* took the Letters graciously, and read them ; and having thoroughly considered the Contents, with a loud Voice he said, My Lords, here's much Matter of Tydings, and also of great Admiration ; the Emperor greets me well, and sends me Word that my Sister *Bellisant*, his betroathed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, and by reason of a false Arch-priest, unto whom he gave too much Trust ; which Priest, for these his treasonable Facts, is accused by a Merchant ; and for Tryal of the Truth of this his Accusation, will put himself in Jeopardy of Life, by single Combat in open Field, Body to Body, with this treacherous Arch-Priest. Now it is so fallen out, that the Day and Place is appointed for the Tryal of his Fact, whereby, I shall be fully satisfied, whether my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast into Banishment : Upon all which, I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered this Indignity, without just Cause, that I will be avenged of him in the severest Manner that War can carry on against him. Having ended his Speech unto his Lords,

in Prefence of the Embassadors, he commanded with Speed, that every Man should address himself to accompany him to *Constantinople*, to behold the Manner of this Fight, between the Merchant and the Arch-priest. The Day of his Departure from *Rome* being come, he takes his Way towards *Constantinople*, where, after a few Days travel, he safely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rang, and made Triumph to welcome him, for all were filled with Joy at his Approach. The Emperor, mounted on Horse-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City, to meet his Brother, King *Pepin*. At last they met ; but the Emperor overcome with Sorrow and Tears, at the Remembrance of *Bellisant*, could not utter a Word. On the other Side, *Pepin* being full of Anger at what had happened to his Sister, gave no Respect to the Emperor's Tears, but proudly began to salute him in this Manner : Emperor (quoth he) leave off your Lamentations, and shake off these Weeds of Sorrow, that you seem to weep for my Sister ; *So he that hath a Harlot to his Wife, I account him mad to grieve for her Misbehaviour* ; and since my Sister hath proved such a One, let her go and take Care of herself, she it not worthy of so much as one Tear, from an Eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the Emperor, I speak not Evil against your Sister, for I am fully persuaded, she is composed of all Virtue and Honesty, and that against all Equity, I have banished her out
of

of my Country. Think you so ? quoth King *Pepin*, then thou art worthy of a double Shame, and do shew unto the World your Weakness, and what great Foolishness remains in you ; when, as by the Report of one Man, and that a Traytor too, you would with such Rigour proceed against an innocent Lady, and (like a Harlot) throw her into Banishment, Shame, and Dishonour, being of the Blood-Royal of *France*. The Emperor hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him thus : Alas ! my Lord, do not thus upbraid me with Wrath and Anger, but rather turn your Tongue upon some milder Saying, for to that Intent have I sent for you, that your own Eyes may be Witness of the Truth. 'Tis true, quoth King *Pepin*, but what you say now is all too late, for you have banished my Sister to the World's Infamy ; and (for ought I know) to Death itself ; for I know not whether I shall ever behold her Face again : Fie, fie, that you being so great a Person, should be so easily wrought upon, to give such sudden Judgment against the Innocent ; I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonourable Act, but Repentance is able to make Amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown : For that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is never possible to be recovered. Again, how little you have esteemed the Honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without Deliberation, and next, without any Knowledge given me, you have

C 3

proceeded

proceeded so against my Sister? I make it plain against you, that Envy towards her and me, was the only Cause of these false and unjust Proceedings. Whilst these Words passed betwixt them, they were now entered *Constantinople*, where with great Joy and Gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperor would have had King *Pepin* to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the King denied, and caused his Train to lodge within the City, and he himself also. Then the Emperor caused many Gifts and Presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: For King *Pepin* thought of nothing but the Dishonour unto his Sister; for the whole City accounting her the fairest, and most virtuous, and the chasteft Lady in all the World, and that by Injustice and Treason, she was banished.

C H A P. VI.

How the Merchant and High-priest encountred at the Place appointed, about the clearing the Lady Bellifant, and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant. How King Pepin, after the Combat, returned into France; and after sailed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

NOW was the Day appointed come for the Combat, between the Arch-priest and the Merchant; wherefore every thing was made in Readiness, according to the Command

of the Emperor. At last there came both the Combatants into the Field, and presented themselves before the Emperor, his Attendants, Knights, and others ; and the Arch-priest armed in a most sumptuous Armour of Proof, all imbos'd with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering Show, that it dazzled the Eyes of the Beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-priest came forth into the Field, and took his Place appointed him, at the End of the List : The Emperor beholding the glorious Shew that the Arch-priest made in his Arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, and in the Presence of the Assembly, dubbed him Knight ; then commanded, that a most rich Armour should be put upon him, in the Presence of King *Pe-pin*, who, during the Time he was arming, promised unto this Merchant, if he overcame the Arch-priest, to advance him to great Livings, and high Authority. These two Adversaries being now in Readiness, and each having their Blazon about their Necks, their Horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give Battle : The Emperor gave strict Charge unto all his Officers of Arms, to have a special Eye upon the Arch-priest, for fear, lest on a sudden, he should quit the Field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their Lives. The Merchant being mounted, and his Sword girt to him, first entered the Lists, after whom came such Abundance of People, that they were numberless. Then

after came the Arch-priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great Honour and Dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Lifts, ready to charge one another; King *Pepin* being there in Person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying, My Friend, the Gods give the Victory against this Traitor. I vow unto thee here, before this Assembly (so I may find out the Truth of my Sister *Bellisant*) notwithstanding the great Advancement that the Emperor hath promised, to take thee into *France*, and make thee Companion with the best of my Kingdom. The Merchant gave the King great Thanks, and said, Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make the traiterous Priest confess, that he hath treacherously sought the Destruction of your Sister. Then came a Herald, administering to them an Oath; and so, clearing the Lifts, left the Champions to their Fortunes. Now are the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the Field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran with such Violence together, that their Spears were broken to their Hands; then they began to set forward to another Course, charging each other with their Swords, in such a violent Manner, that with their Fury, they rebounded from their Armour to the Ground, cutting off whole Quarters of their Corsets, and left them as a Prey for those that attended the Fight. The Arch-priest finding himself so stiffly matched,

matched, gave over the Fight, till towards the Evening, for such was the Custom of the Country, that in any challenged Combat, either Party might refuse to follow the Fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing Time ; so the Combatants were yielded vanquished before Sun-set, or else abide the Sentence of Death ; thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant ; which the Merchant perceiving, he prepared to receive the Arch-priest



courageously, when he encountered him ; which not being long after, the Merchant so redoubled his Stroaks, that he smote off one of his Ears, and his Steel Habergion, and with the Violence of the Blow, the Merchant's Sword fell from his Hands ; which the Arch-priest seeing, put Spurs to his Horse, and charged him with such Violence, that he ran against

the Merchant's Horse, and thrust out one of his Eyes: The Horse feeling himself hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting so furiously, that he unhors'd his Rider, and so hard was the Fortune of the Merchant, that in his Fall, his Foot hung in the Stirrup, whereby he was brought into great Danger, the Horse hurrying him along the Field; that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable Spectacle, and with the Amazement thereof, grew desperate in their Hopes. King *Pepin* also was so discouraged at this disastrous Chance, that the Tears did even trickle down his Cheeks, uttering many silent Ejaculations, against the Unkindness of Fortune.

Now that which was most miraculous, was, all this Time, that the Merchant was dragged up and down the Field, the Arch-priest could not force his Horse to come up to the Merchant, but fled too and fro, whereby he could not make a Prey upon him, as he intended to do. But see, at the last, the Merchant's Horse fell down, by which Means he got his Leg from forth the Stirrup, and at last, got upon his Feet like a valiant and hardy Champion: The Priest perceiving the Merchant had recovered his Legs, came running with strong Violence upon him, and thereby lent him five or six Blows upon his Shoulders, that the poor Merchant was even astonished. At last, he was forced to give back to recover Breath; and in a little Space, finding himself somewhat relieved, he subtilly gave a fresh Assault upon the Arch-priest;

Arch-priest; against whom he struck with such Violence, that the Sword fell out of his Hand; but he first so wounded him, that the Blood ran through his Armour upon the Earth. This so vexed the Priest, that he grew mad with Rage, and turned his Horse upon the Merchant, thinking to over-run him; but the Merchant observing his Drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long Knife, push'd it into the Belly of the Horse, so that the Horse being thus wounded, began to fling and leap; insomuch, that the Priest was in Danger to be unhors'd, and striving to save himself, he lost his Shield: The Merchant seeing him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it; that done, he made again towards his Horse, and smote him in the Belly with his Sword, which brought the Horse and Rider to the Ground. The Priest being thus unhors'd, was very nimble to recover; but the Merchant watching his Opportunity, and as he was rising, he gave him such a Blow, that laid him flat again upon the Ground, and leaping on him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten of his Head: The Arch-priest seeing himself in such Danger, said thus, Alas! my Friend, I pray thee take Pity on me, and give me leave to confess, for I yield myself vanquish'd: The Merchant hereat was very courteous, and granted him his Desire: The Priest had no sooner got on his Feet, but clasping the Merchant in his Arms, threw him

him on the Ground, and leap'd upon him in most sudden Outrage, saying thus to the Merchant, I have now an Advantage, and from my Hands thou shalt not escape with Life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. Ah! reply'd the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me? Well, it is so now that I stand at thy Mercy, and that thou may do with me what thou please; therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my Life, I shall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperor, and King Pepin, and there openly, in the hearing of all Men, testifie, that thou falsly hath accused me, and thereby I may be cleared of those false Accusations, which, by thy Means, have been brought upon me; all which, if you effectually accomplish, I swear and promise to save thy Life; and besides, be a Means unto the Emperor and his Brother, and buy thee Peace, and Forgiveness of this thy foul Fact, committed both against me and them also: Nay more, I swear to thee, by the Faith of a Gentleman; and by the Order of Priest-hood, to give thee a Niece of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, and of a pleasant Behaviour, and to conclude, thou shalt say more than ever any of thy Kindred ever told; thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy. Therefore now advise thyself, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable Life, or miserable in an untimely Death? The Merchant having heard the Arch-priest's Tale, was upon the sudden exceeding sorrowful, and not without Cause; but not knowing what to resolve upon, he at length

length thus answered: Sir Priest, your Arguments are grounded upon good Reasons; therefore I am ready to accomplish your Desires, so that you will be as mindful of your Oath and Promises. In me, quoth the Arch-priest, there shall appear no Fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forwards to the Emperor, and there I will set you free from all those Accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-priest, wherefore rise up then, and let us go together. The Merchant had no sooner got on his Feet, but he began afresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-priest, even to his Teeth; and again he took Courage, and now would requite him in the same Sauce he had served him before; and suddenly clasping the Arch-priest in his Arms, he threw him down, and having him at Advantage, he said thus, *Arch-priest, seeing you have taught me to play my Part, think no more upon Confessions, for you shall confess to me or none.* The Arch-priest seeing himself beaten at his own Weapons, began again to intreat, but the Merchant not regarding his Words, presently put out his Eyes, and gave him so many deadly Blows, that he made sure he should not rise to do him any Harm; then the Merchant called the Marshals of the Field, and said, Lo, here you may see that I have done my best Endeavour against the Arch-priest, and if he be vanquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him to such a Pass, that I may kill him out-right,

right, if I please ; therefore my Request is now, That you conduct *Alexander* Emperor of *Constantinople*, and King *Pepin* of *France* hither to this Place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be Ear-witneses of the Confession, which the Arch-priest shall make unto them, and also to hear in what unjust Manner he waged Combat against me.

The Marshals did according to the Request of the Merchant, and then presently came the Emperor, with King *Pepin* and all the Nobles, even to the Place where the Arch-Priest lay fully vanquished. Then the Emperor demanded of him the Truth, which the Arch-Priest confessed, declaring the whole Plot of his Villanies, and how by his means the Empress had been wrongfully banished. When the Standers by heard all the whole Matter, a Multitude of Tears were shed ; but especially the Emperor, for his Lamentations were so violent, that all that were about wept with great Bitterness. Now, if the Emperor were so sorrowful, what may you think of King *Pepin* her Brother ? Alas ! It was not without great Cause, when they saw and knew, that by too much Trust given to a treacherous Priest, they had lost the virtuous Lady *Bellisant*. Between these two great Princes there was great Joy, and great Sorrow ; Joy to King *Pepin*, that his Sister was found innocent and blameless ; Sorrow to the Emperor, that he should be the only means, by
false

false Suggestions, of his Wife's Banishment. At last, Lamentations were laid apart; when they had heard all the Confession of the Arch-Priest's Treasons, the *Emperor* consulted with his Counsel, that the Traytor should be put into a Cauldron of hot burning Oyl, and so finish his miserable Days, as he had traiterously sought the Life of that innocent Lady. Execution was suddenly to be done; and it being done, the Assembly of People of all sorts were dismissed. Afterwards King *Pepin* withdrew himself towards his Lodging; but the *Emperor*, sorrowful for what had happened, came before King *Pepin*, and humbling himself, begun thus to say: *Alas! dear Brother, I am sorrowful for my Error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable Crime against my Lady, your Sister, and these great Nobles your Attendants; let it suffice, that I behold my own Folly: What shall I say? I can but crave Pardon for my Fault, and give myself into your Hand; and to do with me whatsoever pleaseth you. And for a further Satisfaction, I render up into your Hands, my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining, for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of my own Affections. Take it, I say, for I will be no longer served; but during the rest of my Life, become a Servant unto thee, or any, for no better have I deserved.* King *Pepin* preceiving the *Emperor* so passionate, and so humbly minded, kindly took him from the Ground, and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all Trespasses.

So

So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded? and a speedy Course taken to send to all Parts of the World, to seek the distressed Lady *Bellissant*. Thus all things settled in Order, King *Pepin* having taken his Leave of *Constantinople* (as you have heard,) after a long Journey arrived in *France*, and so to *Orleans*, to refresh his long and tired Spirits, tossed to and fro in Melancholly and heavy Cogitations for the woful Mischance befallen unto his Sister *Bellissant*. Being safely arrived, and seated at *Orleans*, the King was joyful, that he had attained the Place he so much desired, by reason that it was one of the most spacious Forests in the Realm. Being come hither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his Welcome; which was accordingly done. In the midst of these Feastings and Revellings, the 'Squire that had the Charge of the Orphan *Valentine*, took and presented him before the King, saying, Dread Sovereign, Lo, here I present before you, the poor Orphan, that your Majesty found in the Forest of *Orleans*, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at my Expence, dread Sovereign, but at your own. My Liege, the Reason why I tender him unto you at this Time, is, because he is growing to Man's Estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is Time to dispose of him, as you please. The King having heard the Words of the 'Squire, called this Orphan (named *Valentine*) unto him, and took him by the Hand, and

and moved divers Questions unto him, all which he answered with much Modesty, and great Wisdom; and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupboard of Plate should be given unto him: Moreover (said the King) I command that this Orphan, *Valentine*, be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common Love; I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished, and kept with my Daughter *Eglantine*, she is both fair, wise, and well endowed with all the Gifts of Nature. The King having given this Command, it was accordingly accomplish'd, insomuch, that they were both under Government of one and the same Nurse, and had one and the same Attendants; yea, every Way they enjoyed one in the Company of the other, in such wise, that if one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of a Lamentation, till they came together again; but especially the King's Daughter, who so pondered on the prudent Carriages of the Orphan, that she became in Love with him; insomuch, that his Absence brought her into a thousand Fears, and drove her melancholly and disturbed her Thoughts, into a Thousand Doubts and Jealousies.

Now *Valentine* was ever practising himself in Feats of Arms; as, Horse, Armour, Jufts, and Turnaments, exposing himself to all Dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the Inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him
what

what his Heart desired, and furnished him with Armour, Horse, Lands, Revenues; and made him Lord of rich Possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court, many secret Mutterings, whereby many People fretted so sore in Envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful Words against him, saying, That at the best he was but a found, stray, poor, base Child, without any known Parents or Friends; of no genteel, or noble Stock, and such-like. Which when *Valentine* heard, he could take no other Revenge, but set him down and weep; whose Tears fair *Eglantine* perceiving, would, in a tender Woman-like Affection, pour forth Tears also for Company. At length, when he saw Tears little prevailed, he began to forsake them, and taking Heart, bore himself like a Man, amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and genteel Frame, that he gained the Love of all Sorts and Degrees, as well Nobles, as Inferiours. *Valentine* thus growing up in the Love of the Court, and all this while his Brother *Orson* lives in the Forest, all rough, and covered with Hair, like a Bear, leading the Life of a Beast; where we will leave him for a while, and return unto the Affairs of King *Pepin*: It so chanced, that there came into *Orleans*, divers Embassadors from the Pope, demanding Aid against the *Sarazens*, Enemies of the *Holy Faith*, who had lately taken the City of *Rome* by Violence. King *Pepin* understanding hereof, by divers Letters received,

ceived, addrest himself, and his Powers, to make his Resistance against this Common Enemy; and amongst the rest of his worthy Followers, he appointed this young *Valentine* a chief Commander. Fair *Eglantine* hearing that *Valentine* should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful; for she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly sent a Messenger unto him, to come and speak with her. And when he came, she sighing, said unto him, Alas! *Valentine*, my Love, now am I quite bereft of all my Joy, for I perceive you will betake yourself to a dangerous War: Gentle Love, leave me not so desolate; would to the Gods, that I had neither Father, nor Friend in the World, to contradict my Will, then shouldst thou soon perceive how my Affections stands to thy Person: For if Wishes might avail, I swear by the Gods, that thou art the only Man I would join myself unto, in the Bands of Marriage; and then shouldst thou be the King of *France*, and I the Queen.

The young Man hearing her idle Imaginations, said, Madam, leave these Womanish Dotages, you know I am not a Person fitting your Estate; I am a found stray, that your Father hath caused long Time to be nourished for Charity-sake; I am no way fitting you, or the meanest Damsel attending your Person; make your Choice else-where, and join Royal Blood into yours; and so, with all my Duty, I take my leave, and commend you to the

the Gods. Having ended his Speech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady all heavy, desolate, and in the midst of Mourning.

By this Time the King and all his Retinue, were in Readiness to depart, and taking their Way from *Orleans* towards *Rome*, they came to a mighty Forest; and being entered, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and said thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown to you, that in these Woods (as Report goeth) there liveth a strange Monster, a wild Man much feared of Passengers, which Spectacle of Man's Shape, I long to behold; before I venture out farther upon our intended Voyage to *Rome*. The Lords generally consented, and the Chase was instantly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chased several Sorts of wild Beasts, and overcame them: But as for *Orson*, the wild Man, none durst adventure the finding of him, save only his Brother *Valentine* (but he knew nothing) and he followed still the Chase; hoping at last, both to find and fight with him also. Every Way they begirt the Wood, some one Way, some another: The King himself ventured so far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obscure, whereas the wild Man used to hide himself. *Orson* perceiving the King, rushed out upon him, caught him in his Nails (which was long and crooked) and in a rough and ravenous Manner, cast him on the Ground. The King thus suddenly surprized by a Savage, never look'd for Life, but in a piteous Manner,

ner, cried out for Help, who was seconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, who espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his Sword to have run the wild Man through. *Orson* perceiving the glittering Sword, left the King and ran furiously upon the Knight, took him in his Arms, and overthrew him, Horse and all: The Horse sore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad Fit ran up and down the Forest; but as for the Rider (though a Knight at Arms) *Orson* held him so fast with his Twangs and Talons, that at last he pulled him in Pieces. In the mean Time the King escaped, and meeting Part of his Company, related to them the great Danger he had escaped, and the fearful Death of the Knight. These Tydings much amazed the rest of the Company; yet being manfully resolved, they joyned themselves together, and marched towards the Cave, to meet with *Orson*, and either to take him alive, or put him to Death in the Cave: Being come thither, they found the Knight dead, and torn in Pieces, but *Orson* they could not find, for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother *Valentine*; of whose Proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiving their Labour lost, gave over the Chase, and set forwards towards *Rome*. After this, the King ranked his Forces into Battle-Array, and the great Ensign of *France* was given to one, called *Myllon Dauger*, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader;
so

so that he and his two Brethren, *Gervas* and *Sampson*, had the whole Command of the Forces, that then were marching towards *Rome*. When they were come unto *Rome*, King *Pepin* desired Battle, and would fain understand the State that the City now stood in, under the Conquest of the *Sarazens*; but it was told him, *He should not be too inquisitive about those Affairs*; for the *Admiral* of the *Sarazens* had surprized the City, and put Multitudes to the Sword, and had spoiled and defeated all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their heathenish Idols; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, Friars, and all the Ecclesiastical Persons, for to serve at their heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils, after the Custom of the Heathens. When King *Pepin* understood this, he was much enraged, to hear that the *Christians* were thus captivated by *Heathens*; wherefore he advanced nearer to the City, and there having assembled all his Forces, he began to draw them into several Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a sudden Assault; for his Fury was so great against these heathenish *Sarazens*, that he vowed Revenge upon them; but taking better Advice, he reserved himself and his Army for a better Season. As will appear in the next Chapter.

C H A P. VII.

How King Pepin besieged Rome ; and how Valentine justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

KING Pepin being thus come to Rome, besieged it, and after some Days spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty Men of War, and began to speak unto them in this Manner : My Lords, and Followers, you well know that this heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the *Christian Faith*, and *Church of Rome*, hath put many *Christians* to the Sword, and violently trodden under Foot, all such as withstood his Power ; therefore it is our Duties to commiserate their Estate that are thus Overthrown, and to try the Fortune of a Battle, amongst these heathenish *Pagans* ; and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carcasses as a Prey, as many have done before : Wherefore, I King Pepin, resting upon this Resolution, would find out a Man, to bear unto the proud Admiral a Letter of Defiance in my Name. King Pepin having finished his Speech, there was none amongst them made any Answer. At length, *Valentine*, seeing all stand mute, stepped before the King, and began to speak in this Manner : *Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I shall undertake the Message, and shall not fear*

fear to speak, neither to the Pagan Admiral, nor to the whole Host of Pagans, were their Multitude twice as many as they be; and my Return shall make Proof, that I have done my Message, both with Honour, and Advantage to your Majesty. The King hearing *Valentine* thus forward, and of such valiant Resolution, was right joyful; and all those of his Princely Train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous Spirit. Hereupon the King called his Secretary, and ordered him to draw a Letter of Defiance, and deliver the same to *Valentine*; which he accordingly did; and no sooner had he received the Letter, but he took his leave of the King, and all his Train, and being well mounted, he took his Way towards *Rome*, and so to the Palace where the Admiral lay: So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this Manner: *The Gods preserve the Noble and Puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Sovereign; and Mahomet, whom thou servest, save and defend thee, Redoubted Admiral.* When *Valentine* had thus spoken, the Admiral roused from his Chair, and with a fierce and frowning Brow, replied thus unto him: Messenger, return, and get thee out of my Sight; and say thus unto King *Pepin*. Will him either to renounce his Faith, and believe on *Mahomet*, or let him look to receive no other than Sentence of Death; and so destroy him, together with all his Lords and Kingdom: Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode; go, I say, reply

reply not a Word, for my heart is all enraged, that so long I suffer thee. Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprize, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, that if I did assuredly know, that what thou hast done, was through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majesty, thou shouldest never return to *King Pepin*, to carry an answer to thy proud *Majsters Letters*.

Valentine hearing these furious Words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid: Wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said, High and mighty *Emperor*, do not imagine that by pride I am come before you; for when you understand the manner of my coming, you will be astonished thereat. Why then (*quoth the Admiral*) say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by *Mahomet*, I shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprize. Then said *Valentine*, Sir, so it is, that I was accused to *King Pepin* for a Coward, and that since I came to this War, I would secretly have stolen away from the Camp, and returned again into *France*; for which Reason I came into disgrace; and the King vowed the next morning to smite off my head. Perceiving my self in this danger, I sought rather to save my life, than to lose my life and honour; and therefore gave it out throughout the Court, that I would undertake to

D

come

come unto your Court, to defie you on the King's behalf, and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three spears with you in single combat, to try your valiancy, and to win my last honour that I told unto you: Wherefore my request is, that your Greatness would grant me my Request, otherwise I dare not return again, least the King should put me to Death. The Admiral hearing this pitiful tale of *Valentine*, said unto him, Son, I do swear by *Mahomet*, that thou shalt not be refused, but at this Instant I offer thee the Jufts; and to the end that those *Frenchmen* that lye in siege before the City, may have a fight thereof, I will order the place of Justing to be without the City. *Valentine* humbly thanked him, and in token of his acceptance, and feigned love, he fell down, and kissed the Feet of the Admiral. *Valentine* grew into great favour in the Admiral's Court; but yet it often troubled his mind that he could not know who were his Parents. But while he bestowed his wandring thoughts here, the Admiral said thus unto him: Fair Son, methinks you are very pensive; 'tis true (*quoth he*) and not without cause, for I am afraid that I shall be slain in these Jufts; wherefore my request is, that I may have a Confessor, to give me absolution for my Sins. Then the Admiral commanded that a Priest should be brought him: The Priest being come, said unto *Valentine*, Now Confess you unto me; *Valentine* getting the Priest aside, he said thus unto him: Sir,
you

you are a Christian Priest, and you ought most to defend the Christian-Faith: Wherefore hearken to that I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth the greatest secrecy. Thus it is, you know that this day I am to Just with the heathenish Admiral, the greatest Enemy of Christian People: Now I am well assured, that a great number of the Sarazens will issue forth out of the City; to be Eye-witnesses of these Justs to be held without the City. Therefore you shall give warning to all *Christians*, to keep within the Walls, arming themselves in a readiness, and closely keep it from the Ears of the Pagans; so when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Justs, the *Christians* suddenly shall surprise the Guards that keeps the Gates; and if any mutiny arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a messenger to King *Pepin* of what is done, that he with his Army, may come unto them that are without, while those within are set on by the armed *Christians*; so by girding them on every side, that in the end we may make a slaughter of them, that the *Christians* may receive both their City in Peace, and their former liberty. So having ended his Speech, the Priest departed. The Admiral commanded *Valentine* to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among so many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his, named *Salatas*,

D 2 commanding

commanding him to see *Valentine* as well armed at all points as himself; and moreover, charged his Nephew to deliver unto *Valentine* the best horse in his Stable. *Salatas* having received this command from his Uncle the Admiral, took *Valentine*, and led him into a fair hall; being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers Armours, desiring him to make choice of the best. *Valentine* cast his Eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armour, wherewith he should be armed, and making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the Court, where he was attended with his horse, ready to put his foot into the Stirrup. Being come down into the Hall, he presently mounted his Horse; the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed, out of a privy Palace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the chief Gate of the City of *Rome*, for on that side King *Pepin* had laid his Siege. When they were both in the Field, *Valentine* hung his shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Hart, waving in a field of Silver, and on one side a Tree; all which did signify that he was found in a Forrest, and wore the same Arms King *Pepin* bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the Clamour of the *French*, in joy of *Valentine*; the sound whereof, the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued out of the City, to behold these Triumphant Justs.

The Fryar having plaid his part among the Christians, within the City, presently after
the

the Pagans were gone out to behold these triumphs; addrest themselves to take Possession of the Gates; which having gotten, there was entrance again to be expected. King *Pepin* being acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his Men of War ready to relieve *Valentine*, if necessity required. Having all things in readiness, the hour was at hand that the Jufts should begin: So each of them prepared for the encounter, they valiantly couched their Spears, and the first course proved so valiant, that their Spears shivered all in Splinters; each combatant perceiving Valour to brandish on the top of his Helm, made out a second course, where *Valentine* got the better; for with his Spear (charged against the Admiral) he gave him such a Blow, that he forced his Spear quite through his Body; insomuch that he fell from his Horse dead, making a pitiful noise at his departure; wherefore the Pagans ran at *Valentine*, and would have killed him. *Valentine* perceiving their intent, with resolute Courage, put Spurs to his Horse, and with his Sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them as he passed. King *Pepin* with his Host, came up to the aid of *Valentine*, but he was so beset by the Pagans, that he was smitten off his Horse; which *Valentine* espying, came up to the Rescue of the King, so that he horsed him again. The King perceiving himself delivered out of danger, called unto *Valentine*, and said, my Child thou hast

saved my Life, which if the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battle grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensigns and Standards of King *Pepin* on the Walls. The Pagans seeing King *Pepin's* Colours displayed on the Walls, betook themselves to flight; and the Christians followed them so fast, that they soon ended their Days. In this Battle were slain a thousand Pagans, only by means of *Valentine*, who behaved himself so valiant that Day. Thus by his Prowess, the City was again restored to the Christians; for which deed there was Great Triumph in all Christendom, but especially at *Rome*: So that all the Inhabitants round about, gave immortal praise to *Pepin King of France*, and by the general applause of the People, he was created Emperor, and crowned by the Pope. King *Pepin* did many goodly Acts in his time, administering Justice to all. This happened in the Time of Pope *Clement the Fourth*.

C H A P. VIII.

How Haufray and Henry repined at the love the King did shew towards Valentine.

KING *Pepin* having expelled the Pagans out of *Rome*, he took his way back towards *Orleans*; and being there arrived, he

was

was joyfully welcomed by *Bertha* his Queen, and her little Son *Charlemain*, and her fair Daughter *Eglantine*; and their joy appeared so much the more, for that *Valentine*, who accordingly came unto her; and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an Amorous Countenance, begun thus unto him: *Valentine*, you above all the rest are most welcome; and well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs, and the Report says, you are the only Champion that drove the Pagans out of *Rome*. *Valentine* replied, Madam, I can hinder no Man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for myself, I have done little deserving praise; but it hath pleased the King your Father, to do me that Great Honour, even so as all the Days of my Life I shall not be able to make the least part of Recompence. And as he spake these Words, *Haufray* and *Henry* (two Men composed of all Envy) entred the Chamber of *Eglantine*; and seeing him, began thus to speak: *Valentine*, What have you to do here, in the Chamber of our Sister? It is no place for such Straglers as you are; this your boldness is not to be borne; no Man knows of whom you are, therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, lest you dearly buy these your presumptions. *Valentine* hearing these Words, answered, Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister, to her dishonour. What though I be poor, and not know of whence I am, yet I am not so base as to offer Violence unto

one, descended from the blood of Kings: And further, I promise and vow never to come near her Chamber again: And therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very pensive all alone. *Valentine* hasted to the Palace, to wait upon the King at Dinner, where was in presence *Haufray* and *Henry*, and the Duke of *Myllain Daugler*, who likewise waited upon the King, during Dinner-time. Dinner being finished, the King arose, and called to *Valentine*, and in hearing of all his Nobles, began thus to say: *My Lords, here is Valentine, that hath well deserved at our Hands, and that saved my Life when I was in danger; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good service towards me, I freely give him the Earldom of Clerimont of Avergne; and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten.* *Valentine* gave him many thanks, saying, That he had heaped upon him more Honours than he could any ways deserve. *Haufray* and *Henry* hearing these Words, grew greatly Malecontent; and at last *Henry* began to talk with his Brother after this Manner. This found-fellow I perceivè grows in great favour with the King, and there must be some course taken to cross his Designs, or else our overthrow will shortly follow upon it: For (quoth he) you know well, that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one (named *Charlemain*) which if our Father dies, will contest with us in right of the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this *Valentine* will support and uphold him

him against us: Therefore Brother, I think it good to frame some Plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the King, and so far to prosecute your revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not only work his downfal, but life and all; this being effected, we may at our pleasure govern the Realm without Contradiction. He having ended his speech. *Haufray* replied, Let it be as thou hast said, and that we may entrap his Life, this shall be our plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this Upstart hath deflowered our Sister, and that we took him in Bed with her; which, when the King heareth, will certainly put him to Death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their Imaginations with the Death of *Valentine*; while he (nothing mistrusting) served the King daily in all Duty, insomuch, that the King's love daily increased towards him, and above all other most desirous of his Company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to *Orson*, his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forest, so much feared of all Men, that none durst Approach nigh the Wood: Daily Complaints came unto the King from every side; and amongst the rest it chanced one Day, that a poor Man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make complaint against a Wild-Man in the Woods, for one Day, as I and my Wife passed through the Forest, carrying bread and other Victuals, the Wild Man came upon us, took

it away, and eat it every bit : and more than that, he violently took my Wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his Lawless Lust. The King hearing out the poor Man's Tale, was disposed to make himself Merry with his ill fortune, and therefore asked the poor Man this Question, Which grieved him most, either taking away his Victuals, or his Wife? By my faith said the poor Man, at the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said; (*quoth the King*) therefore I command my Treasurer to see Restitution made unto thee for the Loss of thy Victuals; but as for thy Wife, thou must bear the Burthen thereof thy self. After this, the King caused all his Barons to Assemble, and make some order to take *Orson*; all which they did; and thereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all Parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive or dead, should have a thousand Marks for his Reward. Here assembled many worthy Knights to take this task in hand; but the King being one Day in his Palace in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating who should be appointed to this Business, *Haufray*, Enemy unto *Valentine*, being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is *Valentine*, whom you have nourished, and advanced to high Dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful love to our Sister *Eglantine*: He is fittest to set forward to try his Valour, and let him be imployed to fetch in this Wild-man, that is such a Terror to the Inhabitants

habitants: And if with his Valour he can vanquish him, then let him have *Eglantine* in Marriage, which is his desired wish. The King hearing these Words of his Son, said, Away, for thy Speech favoureth of nothing but Envy. What though he be poor, of low Birth, and found in a Forest; yet I find him to me true and trusty, and of gentle Carriage; and to me seemeth to be Born of more noble Parentage than thou art: Leave off these thy Malicious and bitter Speeches against him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended of more noble Lineage, than as yet to us appeareth, And I, for my part (for the divers Vertues that are daily seen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no dishonour can be offered out of a branch of such a generous Spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of *Valentine*, was sore displeased in his Heart; but setting a good Face on the Matter, Dissembles his Countenance for that time; but it seemed *Valentine* well observed him, and at last brake forth into these Words: *Haufray*, without any cause given on my Part, you have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and Conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my Days, and so your Revenge be accomplished upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King, I take solemn Oath, that I will take the enterprize upon me,

and

and find out the Wild-man; and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead Carcass as a Witness in the open Field. But if I Conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me; as also, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an Infant in the Wood. The King understanding well what danger *Valentine* had plung'd himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons, cursing them, for that they were the cause of this Enterprize; for he loved *Valentine* more than any, and at last called unto *Valentine*, and said, My Child, advise you well what you undertake; for to fight with the Wild-man, is Desperation it self; for you cannot be ignorant how many valiant Men, and worthy Champions have by him been overcome: And others likewise of valiant Account, that hath forsaken this Combat: Therefore, I say, let not the evil Words of a few malicious Men make you desperate, in losing your Life. For my Child, it is far better to endure all the bitter Words of envy (which is accounted Virtue) than to hazard ones Life against such a Monster, and no Man. *Valentine* replied, Pardon me my Liege, for I will never revoke my intended purpose: They call me found-brat, which grieveth my very Soul, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what Place; but I rest determined, and so take my leave; for

to

to morrow morning will I set forward to my intended enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not, tho' the fair Lady *Eglantine* made great Lamentation for what had happened; but the next Morning, by brake of Day, she called one of her Maidens, and said, Go to *Valentine*, and bid him come and speak with me before his departure; bid him fear no danger of Life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damsel did as the Lady commanded; and when she came to *Valentine*, she found him mounted on Horse-back, and she did her message unto him. He understanding her errand, said unto her, Damsel, I know the love to be great between the Lady *Eglantine* and me, yet I would not wish her to desire that which will turn to her dishonour: But envy is of so great Power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. For certain it is, that *Haufray* and *Henry* (brethren to your Lady) have at me great malicious Hearts, and will pursue me, even unto Death, if it were possible; wherefore, fair Damsel, bear her this Answer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof; and further, that she hold me in excuse, that I refuse to come; and so farewell.

C H A P. IX.

How Valentine conquered his Brother Orson, (the Wild Man, in the Forest of Orleans) and afterwards departed from the Forest, with Orson, to Orleans, where King Pepin resided.

NOW is *Valentine* upon his Journey, accompanied only with his Page ; and being come to the Forest, he put his Helmet on his Head, and sent him back again : So he rode about all that Day, seeking the wild Man, but he could not find him ; so the Night drawing on, he dismounted his Horse, and tied him to a Tree ; having so done, he refreshed his Body with such Victuals as he had ; and when he had eaten, and the Day shut in, he (for Fear) betook himself to the Top of a Tree, and there lay all that Night. In the Morning, as soon as Day appeared, he looked round about, and at last, espied his Brother *Orson* running through the Forest ; at length the wild Man came to the Place where *Valentine* had tied his Horse, who much wondred at the Beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thinking thereby to rouze up the Courage of the Horse ; for he had never seen the like. The Horse feeling the wild Man's Nails, began to fling and kick exceedingly. *Valentine* setting on the Top of the Tree, noted the terrible Shape of the wild Man, and began to be afraid ; but calling on the Gods, he requested their Aid
against

against this Monster. Orson all this while was busy in beholding the Horse, and still offered him such Injury with his Nails, that the Horse did nothing but kick and bite him: When Orson perceived the Horse to be too hard for him, he caught fast hold on him, and thought to have over-thrown him: Valentine perceiving his Horse in Danger to be slain, he cried out aloud, and said, *Wild Man, leave my Horse, and stay till I come down, and with me thou shalt have Fighting enough.* The wild Man hearing a strange Voice, looked up into the Tree, and espying a Man there, made Signs to him, with his Hands and Head, to come



down, and he would pull him in Pieces. Valentine making all the Haste he could, drew his Sword, and leap'd upon the Ground close by the wild Man; when Orson saw the Sword, and

and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himself from the Stroke ; but suddenly turned again upon *Valentine*, and threw him to the Ground : *Valentine* was very much discomfitted, and looked for nothing but present Death ; for he felt the Strength of the wild Man so great, that he had no Hope of escaping. Being thus both groveling on the Ground, *Valentine* strived divers Times to have gotten *Orson* under him, but could not ; when he saw, that by Strength, there was no Hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed Knife, and smote *Orson* in the Side, that the Blood issued out abundantly : *Orson* feeling himself wounded, all intraged, gave such a Shriek, that the Woods echoed again at the Sound thereof ; but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted *Valentine*, with his sharp Nails, that he got him at such an Advantage, that he threw him again upon the Earth, where they fought so long together, that all the Passages would be too tedious to mention. At last, *Orson* took the Shield from about the Neck of *Valentine*, greatly admiring the same, in Regard of the divers Colours thereon emblazon'd : When he had looked his Fill, he cast it against the Ground, and suddenly returned again to *Valentine*, and with the Violence of his Nails and Teeth, he brake in Pieces both the Ribs of his Armour, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply, with his Nails, that he made the Blood follow in all
Places

Places whereon he laid hold : *Valentine* feeling himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon *Orson* with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him ; but *Orson* recalling back, step'd unto a Tree hard by, which he pulled up, and made thereof a Club ; being thus prepared, he made against *Valentine*, and striking at him, he gave him such a Blow, that he made him fall upon one Knee : *Valentine* recovering again, laid about him so fiercely, there began again another dangerous Fight between these two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the Cause of this their Fortunes. *Orson* was so cruel and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed *Valentine*, had it not been for his Sword ; for he was sore afraid thereof, by Reason he had received a Wound before by a Knife. Long time they fought together, insomuch, that they both grew faint, and gave back, as to take Breath, and stood gaping at each other : Then *Valentine* looked wishfully upon *Orson*, and said thus : *Wild Man*, wherefore dost thou not yield unto me ? For here thou livest like a Beast, having no Knowledge of human Society ; come thy Way with me, and I will make thee know thyself, and others ; I will give thee Food of all Sorts, and also cloath thee in Apparel fitting human Shape. *Orson* understanding by Signs he meant his Good, fell down upon his Knees, and stretched forth his Hands towards his Brother, making Signs unto him, to forgive him, and he would submit unto his Command ; and with
further

further Signs promised, that, during his Life, he would assist him in all Enterprizes. This happening thus, it was great Joy to *Valentine*, in that he had conquered the wild Man, which so many Knights dare not meddle withal; for by this only he had won himself more Honour, than any Knight that lived in *France*. *Valentine* being joyful at this unexpected Accident, took *Orson* by the Hand, and shewed him by Signs that he should go on before him, till they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind; and being out of the Wood, *Valentine* took off one of his Girts, and bound both his Hands fast to his Body, that he should not attempt again to do him any Hurt; and in this Manner he mounted on Horse-back, and led the wild-Man after him, like a Beast, who never resisted; which was a thing most of all to be wondered at.

Valentine took his Way towards *Orleans*; but you must imagine he could not reach there in one Day, therefore he determined to lodge at the next Town or Village: Being come thither, he thought there to take his Rest that Night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild Man, they all ran into their Houses, shutting up their Doors; and for Fear, durst not offer to look out on him. *Valentine* seeing them so full of Fear, cried out unto them, saying, *Open your Doors, and fear not, for we are come only for Lodging*, yet for all this, they would not give him Succour. At last, seeing that Intreating would not

not prevail, he swore most bitterly, *That if they would not receive him into their Houses, to rest there that Night, he would let loose the wild Man amongst them*; still he proceeded to in- treat for Lodging, but none would let him in. At last, as he had threatened, so he did; and letting loose the wild Man, he made him



Signs how he should run against such a Gate, which was an Inn, which he did; and wringing a Post out of the Earth, he flung them open with such Violence, that they fell off the Hooks upon the Ground. *Valentine* seeing the Gate opened in this Manner, entered the House, and the wild Man with him:

But

But when they within saw the Gate broken down, they all forsook the House, and ran out at the Back-door, leaving all to *Valentine*, and his beastly Guest : When he perceived they were all fled, he went to the Stable, and set up his Horse, and dressed him ; and *Orson* in the mean Time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capons, and divers other Provisions of Flesh, roasting at the Fire. *Valentine* made Signs to *Orson*, that he should turn the Spit ; but as soon as *Orson* understood the Meaning, he set his Talons upon the Meat, and tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf. When he had torn the Meat in Pieces, he espied a Cauldron of Water standing by, into which he put his Head like a Horse, and drank extravagantly. *Valentine* perceiving him to be thirsty, made Signs unto him, that he should forsake the Water, and he would give him Wine ; and therewithal took a Pot, and led him into the Cellar ; when *Valentine* had drawn the Pot full, he gave it unto *Orson*, who set it to his Mouth, and tasting the Liquor, found it to be very good, drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the Wine, and afterwards threw the Pot against the Ground, making a Sign for more : *Valentine* fulfilled his Signs, and filled him the Pot again ; but *Orson* espying a little Bowl-dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to *Valentine's* Horse ; but *Valentine* perceiving that, made Signs unto him

him, that his Horse drank nothing but Water; yet *Orson* shewed by Signs, that Wine was a great deal better than Water. Many other Accidents happened while they were in the House, which here we will pass over; for the Night was so far spent, that Rest was fitter for them than Meat, yet *Valentine* hastened to Supper, making *Orson* bear him Company (after his Kind) but *Orson* drank so freely of the Wine, that he became drunk; and in the End got to the Fire, and fell fast asleep. *Valentine* seeing what had happened, said, *No I perceive there is neither Strength nor Resistance in this wild Man; for if I would, I cou'd here end his Days: But in* Regard he would make further Trial of him, he punched against him with his Foot so hard, that it awaked him: Being awaked, he made Signs unto him, that there was People about the House; with that *Orson* suddenly rose as in a Trance, and catching up a great Log within the Chimney, he ran against the Gate of the House, that he made it shake again; at which sudden Action, *Valentine* fell into a great Laughter; which *Orson* perceiving, let all alone, and betook himself to Rest again. *Valentine* made unto him another Sign, that he should fear nothing, for he would be his Watchman; but *Orson* would not sleep again, but with the Log in his Arms; and *Valentine* did as he had promised unto *Orson*, and watched all that Night, fearing the Inhabitants, lest that they should grow into an Uproar;

Uproar ; for they were so possessed with Fear, that they forsook their Houses, and ran every one to the Church, and all that Night made such a Rattling with the Bells, that e're the Morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of War.

Now the Morning being come, *Valentine* betook him to his Horse, leading bound (as he did the Day before) towards *Orleans*, and the next Day came to the City : The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the wild Man, ran every one into his House, shutting their Doors, and getting up into their highest Rooms, gazed out of their Windows. Being entered the City, Tidings came to King *Pepin*, that *Valentine* had conquered the wild Man : The King hearing thereof, was greatly astonished, and at last said thus of *Valentine* : My Child, in a happy Hour thou wast born ; blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the Wood ; for now I see thou art fortunate, and by thee we are delivered of our Fears. *Valentine* rode thro' the City of *Orleans*, till he came to the Palace Gate of the King ; and when the Porter saw *Orson*, he shut the Gates upon them, till *Valentine*, with a loud Voice, said, *Fear not, but go and tell the King, that I will shield him, and all his Court from the Fury of the wild Man ; for I have made him so tame, that he will not hurt any one.* The Porter went and told the King what *Valentine* said, who commanded them to enter the Palace. Then he took *Orson* by the Hand, and led him into the Court.

When

When *Bertha*, and the fair *Eglantine* heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear, *Valentine* went up into the great Hall, where the King sat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Amongst the rest stood *Haufray* and *Henry*, who also made great shew of love, but in Heart wished the Wild-man had been his death. King *Pepin*, and the rest of the Lords gazed on the Wild-man, insomuch, as the King said, He is made of a proper Mould, fair of Stature; and though now he seem rough, yet if he were cloathed, he would become the shape of a right worthy Knight. Then *Valentine* said, My Liege, it were requisite he were baptized. It pleaseth me well (said the King) let it be done: So the Priest was appointed to Baptize him; these were his God-fathers, King *Pepin*, the Duke of *Mil-lain*, and *Valentine*; and the Dutches of *Bour-bon* his God-mother: So they call'd his Name *Orson*: The Baptism being solemnized, the King sat down to Dinner, and *Valentine* waited on his Cup. Then *Orson* was commanded in the Hall to see his behaviour; and being come, the King beheld him earnestly. *Orson* seeing the Meat, took as much as he could grasp in his Hand, and devoured it; having eaten that, he espyed one of the Attendants carrying a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him, he snatched it, and sat him down and devoured it. *Valentine* seeing his behaviour, made Signs unto him, that he did not

not well; whereat *Orson* seemed ashamed; but the King bad him let him alone, for he much delighted in his Rudeness. *Orson* having devoured much Meat, got a Pot of Wine, and drank it off, throwing the Pot on the Ground. Night being come, *Valentine* and *Orson* was appointed to a fair Chamber and Bed; but as soon as *Orson* entered, he laid him down on the Ground, and so fell asleep.

C H A P. X.

How Haufray and Henry took Counsel together, to Murther Valentine, in the Chamber of Eglantine. And how Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin, for aid again the Green-Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.

RIGHT glad and joyful was the fair Lady *Eglantine*, that *Valentine* had conquered the Wild-man, insomuch that she sent him Word to bring the Wild-man into her Presence. Then *Valentine* took *Orson* by the Hand, and led him to *Eglantine*, where was assembled divers Ladies of Honour to behold him; *Orson* being in the Chamber, in a laughing Humour, leapt upon the Bed, there making divers Signs unto the Ladies, which pleased them, but his meaning they could not understand; at which they were right Sorry. At last *Valentine* opened to them his meaning; which was, that he would gladly Kiss and play

play with some of them, whereat they looked one at another, and began to laugh. While this assembly of the Ladies were in the Chamber of *Eglantine*, *Haufray* came to *Henry*, and said thus unto him: Brother, you see how the Honour and Credit of this Foundling encreaseth, which much eclipseth Ours, and we must seek some Remedy for it. It is true (said *Henry*) wherefore let us lay some Plot to cut him off. Then said *Haufray*, hearken to what I shall say, *Valentine* is now with our Sister, and we have a fair Opportunity to kill him in her Chamber: When we have done, we will inform the King, that we found him in her Bed. According to their Determination they put it in Execution, and rushed into the Chamber of *Eglantine*: As soon as *Haufray* was entered, he roughly thus began with *Valentine*: Disloyal Man, now shalt thou know the Price of thy Inconstancy, purchasing daily great dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our Sister, and leading her Affections to work your pleasure on her; insomuch, as by thee she is made unfortunate: But since the King hath been told thereof, and he regarded not our Complaint, it is therefore high Time to take Vengeance on thee in our own Persons. And *Haufray* lift up his Fist, and calling him Traytor, smote *Valentine* on the Face, so that the Blood ran out of his Mouth. *Henry*, on the other side, came to him, and with a Glave, thought to have smitten *Valentine* to the Earth; but *Orson* perceiving they were in

E

earnest

earnest, leapt out, and gave *Haufray* such a stroke with his rough Hand, that he felled him; and after ran to *Henry*, and girded him so between his Arms, that, if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his Wrath, he had destroyed them both. This caused an Out-cry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden Clamour; but when they understood that *Orson* had dealt so violently with the King's Sons, they would have killed him with their Swords: *Valentine* perceiving their Fury to arise, drew his Sword, and swore, that if any of them offered violence to *Orson*, he would run them thorow; this said, he made a sign to him to be still, and so rested himself for that Time. *Haufray* and *Henry* went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against *Valentine*, and the wild Man, saying, Father, in an ill Hour was this *Valentine* born, for he hath brought hither the wild-Man, only to work our overthrow; and if you put him not to Death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal Person. The King hearing this Complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this Answer: That as for *Orson* he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for *Valentine*, the King sent for him, to demand the Cause of this Disorder. *Valentine* being come before the King, began to say in this Manner: Dread Sovereign, I was in
the

the Chamber of your Daughter *Eglantine*, accompanied with divers other Ladies, that desired to see *Orson* : I know not how, nor why, your two Sons violently entered, charging me, that I had abused the Body of your Daughter. Moreover, in the Heat of their Violence used against me, *Haufray* smote me on the Face, that the Blood issued out of my Mouth ; and *Henry* lifting up a Glave, thought to have taken away my Life. All which, when *Orson* saw, he suddenly made towards them and smote them both to the Earth, and therewithal began his uproar. The King hearing this Tale, said, and is this true what you have said ? Upon my Life (said *Valentine*) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, *Orson* hath done nothing but Right, and that which in Duty he ought to do. And as for you *Haufray* and *Henry* I see very well, that you are swollen full of Mallice against *Valentine* ; wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill against him ; for here I Vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many Tryals of his Love and Faithfulness towards me. And with this Answer *Haufray* and *Henry* departed, altho' sorrowful in Heart, that they could not work their Wills upon him.

They being gone, *Valentine* stayed still in the King's Hall, with the other Nobles that were there assembled, and *Orson* went here and there round about the Palace ; at last

he came unto the Kitchen, where the Cooks were making ready Supper, and being there, and espying two Capons ready for the Fire, made towards the Capons, set upon them, and eat them up raw like a hungry Dog: The Cook seeing him eat up his Capons, took a Pestle that lay by, and lent him such a Blow, that he made him bow therewith; *Orson* feeling the Blow, stooped down, and took the Cook up between the Legs, and threw him down upon the Ground, and when down, he so belaboured the poor Cook, that he had like to beat him to Death. Tydings was brought unto the King, that *Orson* had slain the Cook, and none durst come near him. The King hearing thereof, willed him to be brought before him, and made Signs unto him that he should be hanged. But *Orson* fetched the Pestle, and made Signs how the Cook had beaten him therewith; wherefore the King commanded, that none should offer him any injury. So after that *Valentine* taught him Manners, how he should behave himself; and they both lived quietly in the Court.

• It chanced that not long after the coming of *Valentine* and *Orson* into the Court, that Duke *Savary* sent certain Messengers unto King *Pepin*, which said unto him, Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to request your Aid against a false and accursed Pagan (called the *Green Knight*) who hath besieged his Confines, and intends to have his Daughter by force of Arms, notwithstanding all

all the Resistance that he and his three Sons can make. The King having heard this Message, made this Answer: We agree to give him all the Aid we can. He had no sooner given Answer unto the Messengers, but there came unto the Court another Messenger from *Lyons*, who having paid his Respects to the King, said thus, Renowned King, assemble your Men of War in Readiness, and conduct them towards *Lyons*, for the *Almains* are coming against you in great Numbers; their whole Force consisting of above an hundred thousand fighting Men. The King hearing of this sudden News, was much troubled in Mind, and presently called before him the Arch-bishop of *Rhemes*, the Duke of *Myllon Daugler*, *Garvas* and *Sampson*, these with others of his Nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal, craved their Council what was best to be done, whether to go to *Aquitain*, to succour Duke *Savary*, or to *Lyons*, to resist the *Almains*? Whereunto *Myllon Daugler* made this Answer: The Duke, I Confess, deserveth to be succoured, but yet in two Extreame, let us chuse the Less: Therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present Danger; and for the Duke, he must be content with our present Affairs for an Answer. So in general it was concluded to go for *Lyons*. With these Words, the Messenger that came from Duke *Savary*, departed, and carried these Tydings with him

to *Aquitain*, which made the Duke very sorrowful to hear it, because the *Green Knight* had very strongly assailed him. Now here, gentle Reader, I'll let you understand, for the better ordering your Proceedings, this *Green Knight* here spoken of, was Brother to *Ferragus* the Giant that kept the Lady *Bellissant* in his Castle, who was the distressed Mother of these two Infants, born in the Wood, called *Valentine* and *Orson*, as it is before related. Duke *Savary* perceiving no hope of Aid from King *Pepin*, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions. That all, of what Condition soever, should be ready arm'd against the next Day, for he would then go and attack the *Green Knight*, and fight him in the open Field; all which was accordingly performed. The Day appointed being come, both Armies met as well Horse as Foot; the Pagans presented themselves in Multitudes, and the *Green Knight* behaved himself so valiantly, that at the first Encounter, with his Battle-Ax, at two Blows, he slew two valiant Knights: Duke *Savary* perceiving him to be so valiant a General, came up to Encounter him, and meeting, they attacked each other; but the Duke was ill advised to venture his Body against the *Green Knight*, because it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he should never be overcome of any, except he were a King's Son; and such a one as had never sucked the Breasts of any Woman. But the *Green Knight* was herein deceived, for he

thought

thought it impossible any such Man should be upon the face of the Earth, but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you shall understand.

Let us now return to the two valiant Leaders, who fought long and fiercely; but the Duke ventured so far into the Enemies Hands,



that when he thought to retire, he could not; for he was surrounded with such Multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken Prisoner, and brought back unto the *Green Knight*, whose Ransom could not be granted for any Gold or Treasure. His Men at Arms perceiving the Duke surpris'd, returned to *Acquitain*, sore lamenting the Loss of their good Duke. And his three Sons, *Garen* the elder, *Anselme*, and *Garin* the younger, made great Moan to see the hard Hap of their Father. The Sons having shewed their Sorrows,

E 4

in

in comes Fezon, his Daughter, with this lamenting Out-cry: *Alas, in an ill Hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered Death in my Quarrel; and yet there is one Thing troubleth me more than all the rest; which is this, That my Father should be held Captive in the Hands of his Enemies, the only Way to bring his aged Years with Sorrow to the Grave. Alas! dear Father, your Love to me is the only Cause of all these disastrous Chances.* Thus was Fezon in great Dispair; insomuch, that with this Extremity of Sorrow, she had nigh finished her Days, had not the rest of the Ladies attending, laboured to comfort her in this great Sorrow. Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with Sorrow, the Green Knight triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavillion; and having him there, began to revile him in this dildainful Manner: *Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have Power over thy Life, which thou cannot deny; therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my Lips; either give me thy Daughter Fezon to Wife, and to redeem thy Life, or else I will have her against thy Will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there royally Crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions.* The Duke hearing these proud Menaces, began thus to reply: *Proud and insotent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give Consent to thy having my Daughter, except thou wilt be Baptized.* The Green Knight hearing

hearing him say so, replied, *Urge me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet, wherefore I tell thee once again, except thou yield to my Demand, I will first make thee finish thy Days miserably, and afterwards consume all Acquaintain to Ashes; and after that, put to the Sword all that come in my Way, Men, Women, and Children.* The Duke hearing the Pagan thus resolute, began again in this Manner: *Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy Cruelty; for I had rather rely on their Power than thine.* The Green Knight hearing him say so, began afresh with him in this Manner: *Grave Duke, leave off these thy sad Lamentations, and hearken unto my Relation, and Resolution also, which is this: I am not ashamed to let you understand, that thy Daughter's Beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recall my threatned Sentence of Death against thee; out of which captivate Affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to Conditions: That thou shalt find out a Knight within the Space of six Months, to encounter me; and if it happens, that by Strength of Arms, he can conquer me, I vow by Mahomet, to send thee back into thine own Country, without wasting the same: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then thou shalt willingly resign thy fair Daughter into my Hands, to be my lawful Wife.* These Articles being drawn up, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto; so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed. The Agreements thus concluded, the Green Knight gave leave that Duke Savary should

E 5

depart,

depart, upon Conditions, that he should swear to keep Covenants, not only for the present, but during Life. The Duke being thus delivered, made his Repair to *Acquitain*, and being come, he caused open Proclamation to be made of those Conditions, whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his Daughter; and withal the Truce taken for the Space of six Months. His Counsellors hearing what had past, advised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these Advertisements following: "If there be any Knight whatsoever, that durst encounter the *Green Knight*, for the Love of the beautiful *FEZON*, he should lay down his Gage, and so be answered." These Letters were sent into Twelve Christian Lands; but what followed thereupon, you will find in the ensuing Chapter.



C H A P. .XL.

How divers Knights arrived at Aquitaine, at the solemn Just for the Love of the beautiful Lady Fezon. How Haufray and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.

DURING the Time of the Truce, between Duke Savary, and the Green Knight, King Pepin had taken his Journey against his Enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Host; being come before the City with his Forces, he set upon King Lampatris, who had also brought into the Field a hundred thousand Men: Lampatris was King of Sires, Holland, and Frizeland, with the Country of Monemarch; in which stood a very strong City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin having Knowledge thereof, strongly besieged it, in-somuch, that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer Banishment; but resolving upon the Safety of their Lives, they yielded the City, which the King bestowed upon Guy, Marshal of France.

The Wars being ended, Pepin returned to France, with all his warlike Soldiers; being arrived at Paris, it was told him, Duke Savary had taken Truce with the Green Knight, and the Manner how; at which the King laughing, said, in the Presence of his Barons.

Whe

Who is he amongst you, that would win fair Fezon for his Love, by Fighting in single Combat against the Green Knight, whom if he Conquer, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but one Half of his Possessions; and for the Truth of what I have said, here is Letters written with his own Hand. Every one of the worthy Knights viewed these Letters, yet none of them all durst undertake the Enterprize. Valentine perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King, Dear Sovereign, if it please you to give me leave, I will venture my Strength upon the Green Knight, and will gladly undertake the Task: Again, I have a great Desire to leave France, for I long to take in Hand some tedious Journey, to find out the Mother that bore me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine, said the King, take thou no Care, whence thou art, for it is in my Power to make thee greater than any Man within my Court: And as thou art willing to go to Aquitain, I freely give thee leave; but on Condition, That after thou hast tryed thy Manhood with the Green Knight, thou return, if thou escape with Life. Valentine yielded to the King in his Demand, and so, taking leave, he soon after prepared for his Journey. When Eg-lantine heard that he was going to Aquitain, she was very sorrowful, and at last, in the midst of Tears, sent for Valentine to come to her: Valentine promised the Messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed; and being come, she burst into Tears, saying, Ab, Valentine! now I perceive that all

my

my Joys are at an End, and that you are resolved to leave the Country of France : I wish it were my good Hap to go with you, for there is not a Man living, whom I hold so dear as you, and (were I not curbed by my Birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou may the better perceive my true Intent, take thou the Keys of my Treasure, and take what you please, for there is great Store ; and the Gods give thee Succour, in all thy Knightly Enterprizes. Lady, quoth he, Silver and Gold I need none ; but that which most of all troubleth me, is, that I bare upon one of my Shou'lders a Cross, which is of the Colour of Gold ; of which Sign I know not what to think, but resolve thus ; never to rest in any Place, till such Time as I have found out the Place of my Nativity. And so, lovely Lady, I take my leave, earnestly requesting you to stop this Current of Tears ; for I vow, That if I find my Birth answerable to yours, to take you as my only Choice to Wife ; forsaking all other. On the other Side, having found out my Birth, and find it not answerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the Wealth in the World ; for malicious Tongues in Time to come, will say, Where's the Brethren, Sisters, or Cousins of this Runagade, that hath presumed to match himself unto the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin ? Having spoken these Words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of Grief. But when she had sat some Time considering, she could not be satisfied, but offered to follow him wherever he went ; and in Conclusion, brought him
some

some Part of his Way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility: *Valentine* being departed, *Haufray* and *Henry* were glad, privily conspiring how to bring it to pass, that he and *Orson*, who went along with him, might by Treachery come to an untimely Death.

Va'entine and *Orson* having taken their leave of King *Pepin*, pursued their Journey to *Aquitain*. Being on their way, *Haufray* and *Henry* consulted together, joining to their Aid a Third, who was Cousin to them, how they might lie in Ambush to set upon *Valentine* and *Orson*, to work their Destruction, which number was about thirty able Men. This Plot being thus come to Perfection, charge was given to these warlike Men, that if they could not overcome *Valentine* and his Brother *Orson*, and put them to Death, that they should lay hold on *Va'entine*, and keep him safe. The Place appointed where this should be done, was a large and great Forest, thro' which they must needs Pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it chanced that *Valentine* came riding along, with *Orson* running by his side swifter than any Horse, who coming near the place where these Men lay, out steps their Captain, *Grygar*, accompanied with all his Troop, with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized *Valentine* on a sudden, and to have put him to Death: Now this fierce Traytor lent him such a mortal Blow, that the Sword pierced quite thro' his Armour, and entred in-

to

to the Flesh, insomuch as the Blood followed the Blow, and withal uttered these unwelcome Words, *Valentine*, either yield thy self Captive, or receive thy Death. *Valentine*, as a Man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the sight of his Blood, and considering how he was encompass'd with a Multitude of his Enemies, recommending his Innocency unto the Gods, at last spoke in this Manner: My Lords, speaking to *Haufray* and *Henry*, I see well that you have determined my Days by Treason, and without Cause on my part given; but yet I assure you, that before I yield my self into your Hands, or before the Days Sun be set, I shall send some of you here pre-



sent into such a Country, that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring Tydings of your Valour; and therewithal drew forth his Sword, and gave the first that encountered him such a Blow upon the Head, that he
clave

clave him to the Teeth, and there he lay for Dead: After that, he betook him towards the rest, with such Violence, that at every stroke one fell before him. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to Rouze himself, and with his rough Hands and piercing Tallents, rent and tore all that came in his way, and so bit them with his Teeth, that they fell groveling unto the Ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like Dirt, pinching them with his Feet. *Valentine*, seeing *Orson* thus bestir himself, held up his bloody Sword, defending himself, and pursuing the Battle so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight: *Grygar*, their Captain, perceiving all his Men thus killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud Voice in this Manner: *Valentine*, yield, or else look for nothing but Death. *Valentine* hearing these insulting Words, made towards *Grygar*, and in a furious Manner assaulted him, but being too forward, he plunged himself into the Throng, that he was enclosed round about, they keeping off *Orson* with their long Spears. Being thus beset with Enemies, he still behaving himself so valiantly that none durst lay Hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with Multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous Noise;

but

but he could not overtake them, for they rid swifter than he could run, and having at last lost sight of them, knew not which way he had best to take, *Grygar* commanded them to follow after *Orson*, and bring him back, either Alive or Dead; but in vain they followed him, for he out-run them, and so escaped. Those that had the Charge of *Valentine*, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forest, kept by a Notable Thief, who was Cousin-german to *Grygar*; *Valentine* being entred the Castle-gate, they treated him evilly, and conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the Heart, insomuch, that he burst out into these Speeches: Alas, now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the Hands of my deadliest Enemies; and those that have ever sought my Life. Farewel King *Pepin*, for I fear I shall never see thee more; and that which most vexeth me, is, that they will never understand the truth of my Death, for the stench of this loathsome Dungeon doth even stop my Breath. Farewel *Orson*, for thou hast already suffered Death for my sake; and more no Man could do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother. Farewel my dear Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for I now must Die without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus he lamented, whilst his Enemies determine what shall be done

done to him: Some were of Opinion to put him to Death; others, that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment: But *Grygar*, being Lord over the rest, would not yield that he should be put to Death, but rather to keep him in Prison, till *Haufray* and *Henry* have received knowledge of their Proceedings. Having thus set down their Resolution, they determin'd to take their Journey towards *Paris*, where the King then lay, to meet with *Haufray* and *Henry*, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that *Valentine* was fallen into their Hands. Now understand, that *Orson* all that Night was fain to rest within the Wood, lying down at the root of a Tree; the Morning being come, he took his way towards *Paris*, never resting till he came into the presence of King *Pepin*: Being come thither, by Signs and Tokens he shewed the Manner of the taking of *Valentine*; but yet for all the hast he made, *Grygar* arrived at the Court before him. *Haufray* and *Henry* were much grieved that *Orson* had escaped, but all their comfort was he could not speak, thinking thereby for to Escape from mistrust and Suspicion, but their hopes were soon laid in the Dust, as hereafter will appear.

The next Day the two Brethren had appointed that *Grygar* should return in all hast, to the Castle, to put *Valentine* to Death, thereby thinking all their Treasons might pass undiscovered. But see how it came about, that

all

all their Counsels were quite overthrown; for *Orson* came unto the King's Palace that Morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every Man took his Place. The King being set, and casting his Eyes about, suddenly espied *Orson*, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that *Valentine* was not far off, but it fell out contrary. *Orson* ran through the Hall, making a lamentable Noise, and knocking his Breast in a most hedious and fearful Manner, which drove the King into ten thousand Fears, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable Spectacle. *Orson* ran along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every Man, and making many fearful Signs: Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon *Grygar*, who espying *Orson* hung his Head in his Bosom: *Orson* having once got the sight of him, ran furiously at him, and gave him such a sturdy stroke, that he smote off one of his Ears; after he began to lay upon his Face, inso-much that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke one of his Teeth. *Grygar* being thus wounded, began to cry out for help; but *Orson* hearing him make such an uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroke, that he felled him unto the Earth, overthrowing Tables, Meat, and all that stood before him, which drove all the Beholders into Admiration: And had he not been rescued

rescued by a a valiant Prince that then set at the Board, he would never gone from that Place alive: The Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King in this Manner: Mighty King, consider in what danger this Man is fallen by the fury of this wild Man: and either let him dye for this Presumptuous fact, or no Man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replied, we will consider the Cause, and as we find it, so we will proceed against him: Bring him hither before us, that we may Question the Cause of the Fact. Orson was upon these Words brought before the King, and he demanded, how he durst presume so far into the Presence of his Majesty? Orson answered by Signs how he had slain *Valentine* in the Forest, and that he would be revenged for his Death, on that inhuman Traytor *Grygar*; and withal closed his Fist, and put it to his Mouth in great Rage, in token of defiance. King *Pepin* perceiving by his Actions, the Cause of the Matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons in this Manner: My Lords, you see, as well as I, that this wild Man had challenged *Grygar* to fight him; therefore tell me your Opinions, what is best to be done in this Case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this wild Man should find out *Grygar* above all the rest of the Knights here assembled; therefore let every Man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lie therein; and for my Part,

1

I would willingly give consent that it should be tried forth by Combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the Verdict that the King had passed. So the Battle was determined, and *Grygar* was brought to the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the wild Man; *Grygar* hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and said, and not without Cause, for he fore-saw that this Treason would come to light; and therewithal cast an ill-favoured Eye on *Haufray*. *Henry* perceiving *Grygar* stand so amazed, said, *Grygar* fear not, for I promise thee, however it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your Peace, so thou wilt swear never to reveal the Fact. Yea, quoth he, I must suffer a reproachful Death for your sakes. Having thus said, he left *Henry*, and returned again unto the King, saying, Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task; the Reason chiefly moving me, is, that insomuch that it is not Man against Man, whereby a Knight may win Honour, but a wild Savage to Encounter with a Man, and no Knight: I think I may safely, if it please your Majesty, refuse the Combat. Nay, quoth the King, no excuse in this Case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my advice, but also by the Counsel of my Barons; and the Reason moving us
to

to grant it, was, that Treason long lying hid, might come to light. *Grygar* hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into dispair; but *Haufray* being there, comforted him again in this Manner: Doubt not, for you have Equity on your Part; and besides, I will see you well armed in all Points, fitting your Knightly Race. When *Orson* gathered by Signs, that he should fight the Traytor, he was very glad; and withal, made Signs unto the King that *Valentine* was Dead; whereat the King grew very sad. And fain would *Orson* have been upon the back of *Grygar*, but that the King commanded him to be taken away; making Signs unto him that he should strike no more, till the time they should meet for the trial of the truth. Again, the King called unto *Grygar*, to make hast to Arm himself; *Grygar* loath to venture his Life upon so uncertain Ground, began once again to speak unto the King, saying, Most dear Sovereign, I have been long Servitor about your Person, both in War and Peace; but you reward me not accordingly, insomuch, as you compel me to fight against a Man that hath neither Sense, Reason, nor in truth, Human shape. *Grygar*, said the King, if the truth be on your side, you need not fear, for you shall enter into the Field well armed. Again, you shall be well mounted, he on Foot; nor shall he bear any Weapon: The right, you say, is on your side, wherefore maintain that

that right, and shew your Valour; for the sentence of Combat cannot be recalled.

C H A P. XII.

How Orson and Grygar fought together; and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to Confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon. How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to King Pepin, and how Haufray and Henry, had been the only Plotters thereof.

THE Place of the Combat being appointed, Orson attended in Readiness for his Enemy; in the End, Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, he took his leave of them in this Manner: My Lords, in your Cause am I delivered over to Death; evil was the Day wherein I began this Enterprize. Hold thy Peace, said Henry, for I will defend thee from the Sentance of my Father, and work thy safety, so thou wilt be secret. Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted, went towards the Palace Gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the Hour being come, the King repaired to the Window, all the Nobles in the Court being assembled; the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either Part. So Grygar being entred the Lists, he espied Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying, Villain, thou hast offer'd me great wrong, in putting out
one

one of my Eyes; but e'er I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me. *Orson* perceiving whereunto his proud Speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, knashing his Teeth; whereat *Grygar* suddenly couched his Spear, and run upon him; *Orson* espying the spear bent against him, gave back, whereby *Grygar* was disappointed of his Mark, and run his Spear fast in the Ground; *Orson* taking this advantage, suddenly seized the spear into his own Hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a stroke therewith, that he stunn'd him. *Grygar* feeling the fury of the stroke, set Spurs to his Horse, and rid like a mad Man about the Field; *Orson* ran after him with a grinning Countenance, making Signs unto the King that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. *Grygar* fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured these Words: Ah, *Haufray*! for thy Cause and Sake I am thus delivered over to Death. Long and Tedious was the fight; but *Grygar* could never so much as wound the wild Man. At last *Orson* cast away his Spear, and come to *Grygar*, in such Manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and Furious, that he overthrew his Rider, and with the fall he lost his shield; which *Orson* espying, put it on his own back; after he came unto *Grygar*'s Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the Field, and making ill-favoured Signs
and

and Tokens ; infomuch that all the Beholders stood as Men dismayed. Amongst the rest, the King appeared very sorrowful , and at last began thus to speak : My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive on whose Side the Victory will fall ; but it is my Opinion, that there is Treason smothered, and yet not come to light. *Orson* having ranged a great while about the Field, after his Enemy, at last forsook his Horse, and encountred *Grygar* on Foot ; infomuch, that he lent him such a Blow, that he smote him to the Earth ; afterwards he leap'd upon him, and disarm'd him of his Weapons ; then the next Blow he struck, he smote off one of his Arms ; next, on the Body he gave him such a Wound, that he cut him even to the Reins of his Back. *Grygar* having received all these Wounds, cryed out most pitifully, infomuch, that every one requested he might have a Priest to confess to him his Sins. The Guard that was appointed for the Field, hearing these Out-cries, sent out a worthy Knight, to demand what he had done ; unto whom *Grygar* said, Sir, bring me before the King, and before him, and the rest of this Assembly, I shall reveal the Treasons whereof I am guilty.

At last, *Grygar* was brought before the King, who asked pardon for his high Offence ; and in the Presence of all the Beholders, told him, *That the only Actors in this traiterous Plot, were Haufray and Henry, his*
F Sons ;

Sons ; and by their Means he had taken Valentine, and put him in Prison, and there designed to put him to Death. The King having heard his Tale, and perceiving the whole Truth of this Plot, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came to. He having thus given Sentence against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all Haste possible unto the Prison where Valentine lay. Orson perceiving the King would undertake such a Journey, addressed himself to run by the King's Horse, leading him the Way, and making many Signs of Joy and Gladness. The King marking well the wild Man's Behaviour, often spake unto the Lords in this Manner : *My Lords, it is wonderful that this wild Man should bear such an ardent Affection towards Valentine ; and besides, it strikes me into a thousand Imaginations.* Now you must know, that the King had great Cause to love this wild Man, for he was his natural Nephew, tho' as yet not revealed ; neither was the Time yet come to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond, Sister to the Giant Ferragus, it should be made manifest ; for at that Time Clerimond had a Castle, and in it a Head of Brass, composed by Necromancy ; which Head told to Clerimond, all that should happen unto her all her Life ; and also, all that ever she had done in her fore-passed Time : Besides, this same Head was composed of such Magick Art, that it should never leave off speaking, till the noblest

blest Knight in the World should enter the Castle, and then the Head should utterly give over Speaking. This fell out upon *Valentine*, whom the fair Lady *Cerimond* shall take to Husband, and for whom he shall endure a World of Miseries, as in the succeeding History you shall understand. So we leave this, and return back again to King *Pepin*, who was on his Journey towards the Forest, to the Aid of *Valentine*; and *Orson* being with him, brought him unto the Castle wherein he was imprisoned: Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates; for so they were commanded by the Residue within the Castle. The King perceiving he could not enter in Peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by Force, which they did: Being got in, they seized upon all the Traitors, and bound them fast in Chains; having so done, they went into the Dungeon where *Valentine* lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King. *Valentine* seeing the King, fell upon his Knees, and gave him many Thanks for that extraordinary Kindness, in delivering him out of a Hell of Darkness, and Fear of Death. The Barons also that attended the King, shewed great Joy and Gladness in seeing him, telling him all that happened, and how *Orson* had fought with the Traitor *Grygar*, and overcome him. *Valentine* hearing this, embraced *Orson*. Afterwards the King commanded that all the Traitors should be led

into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto *Valentine*: *Sceing it is thy good Hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the Hands of thy Enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me. But he reply'd, Dread Sovereign, Pardon me, for I will never return again, till I have found out my Parents, from whom I am descended; and so I humbly take my leave of your Majesty.*

So here we leave King *Pepin*, and treat only of *Valentine* and *Orson*, who are taking their Way towards *Acquitain*, to fight the *Green Knight*, a Man feared by all Men: For I must call to Remembrance, what I hinted of before, that he should never be vanquish'd by any but a King's Son, that had never sucked the Breasts of a Woman. Being come to *Acquitain*, the People flocked from all Parts to see the rough and unmanly Shape of *Orson*; but *Valentine* seeing their Folly, provided him a Jacket of Steel; when *Orson* had it on, he was much offended, and would have thrown it away, but he much feared *Va'entine*, and would do any thing he commanded. *Orson* having his Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his Countenance according to his Heart. Now, as they were riding on their Way, *Valentine* espying a Man making great Lamentation: *Va'entine* beholding him well, said thus unto him, Friend, what causeth all those Tears? have you sustained any Wrong, either by

Man

Man or Beast ? Tell me what may be the Cause, and I promise you the best of my Power to relieve you. Alas, said he, to that I make no Doubt ; but know this, that the cause of my Sorrows, is the Loss of a most kind and loving Master ; a Man of the greatest Valour in Christendom. How have you lost him quoth *Valentine* ? Sir, my Master hearing of the Articles between Duke *Savary* and the *Green Knight*, big with Hopes of winning the fairest Lady in the World, called *Fezon*, on whose Account these Articles were drawn ; and is to this Effect : The Man that overthrows the *Green Knight* in single Combat, shall have her to Wife. Divers valiant Knights have there miscarried ; and when he conquered them, he caused them to be hanged on a Tree ; and the Number that are already dead are two and thirty, of which my Noble Master is one ; for he shews no Mercy towards any. Is all this true, quoth *Valentine*, that thou hast told me ? Why then, sure he is some Devil in Man's Shape, that doth such strange Exploits : But I am going to *Acquittain*, to try my Fortune against him, for I have heard much of the Lady *Fezon*. Ah, Sir ! (quoth the 'Squire) go not thither, to lose your Life by such a Devil. 'Squire (said *Valentine*) I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous *Green Knight* ; but if I escape him, I will first talk with the Lady *Fezon*, and take her Advice.

Orson gathering some understanding of their Talk, made Signs to *Valentine*, that he would fight with the *Green Knight*, and that he would make Love to the Lady *Fezon*; whereat he laughed heartily. By this Time they were come near the City of *Aquitain*, which stood on a Hill; and meeting with an Old Man, he asked him, what City that was before him? who answered, It is *Aquitain*. Now tell me (said *Valentine*) where dwelleth the *Green Knight*? Why, Sir, said he, without the City; I suppose you are going to fight with him. Ay, quoth *Valentine*. Ah, Sir! (said the Old Man) undertake not so foul a Folly; for it is impossible to conquer him. Come hither, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I will shew thee above forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome: And there is now but fifteen Days to be accomplished, and then if he be not conquered, the Duke of *Acquitain* must part with his fair Daughter *Fezon*, to his great Grief, and the Overthrow of the whole Kingdom. He had no sooner spoke these Words, but there came another antient Man of fourscore Years of Age, in the Habit of a Pilgrim; this Man was that *Blindiman*, 'Squire to the distressed *Bellissant*, and he it was that led the Lady *Bellissant* into the Cattle of *Ferragus* the Giant, as before we have related: *Valentine* espying him, demanded of him who he was, and from whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from *Constantinople*; but I could not enter into the City, by Reason

a Pagan Soldan had besieged it ; neither could I come to deliver the Message on which I am sent ; wherefore I thought it my safest Course to return. Pilgrim, quoth *Valentine*, what thinkest thou of the *Green Knight*, is it not possible he should be overcome ? No, said the Pilgrim, I advise you not to follow the Enterprize ; for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would conquer you all. Pilgrim, whither go you ? said *Valentine*, Sir, I take my readiest Way to *Paris*, for I have a Message to King *Pepin*, from a Sister of his, named *Bellissant*, that long hath been banished from *Constantinople* wrongfully ; and now she is in the House of a Giant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably ; intending to know King *Pepin's* Mind, whether he be consented to those Wrongs done unto her, for he knoweth she is a virtuous Lady ; and for her Sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat with the Emperor of *Greece*, for the Wrong he hath done unto her. Palmer, quoth *Valentine*, I pray thee to return back again with me to *Aquitain*, for thither am I going, to fight with the *Green Knight* : If the Gods give me Victory against him, I will accompany thee into *France* ; for it is only for the Love I bear unto King *Pepin*, that I undertake this Fight ; for he hath been the Means of my Preservation, and as a Father unto me : Therefore unto him I dedicate all my Labours, and am wholly at his Command. Sir,

F 4

quoth

quoth *Blandiman*, to this Motion I will never consent, for my Lady hath put me in Trust to dispatch her Affairs, and I will discharge the Duty of a trusty Servant towards her; and so, taking my leave, I commend you to the Protection of the Gods. The Palmer being gone, *Valentine* looked long after him, and not without Cause, tho' he knew not why; for this was the Man that had borne a Part of his Mother's Exiles. *Valentine* took on his Journey, and in a short Time came near the City of *Acquitain*; and beholding it very earnestly, and passing on, he espied a pleasant Fountain; thither he went, and alighting from his Horse, and laid him down under a Tree, to refresh himself, and *Orson* was his Keeper all the while. When he awaked, he prepared to take Horse again, but suddenly arrived at the same Fountain a most curious Knight, proud, and of so haughty a Nature, that he was stiled the *Proud Knight*; and withal, so fierce and resolute, that he never asked Question of any Man; yet, if he whom he met, saluted him not, he presently killed him: This *Proud Knight* came to the Fountain, and *Valentine* beholding him, said never a Word; and *Orson* also gazed fiercely on him. The *Proud Knight* was angered in his Heart, and approached near unto *Orson*, and gave him such a Blow, that the Blood issued out of his Mouth: *Orson* feeling the Smart, suddenly took him and threw him to the Earth, and espying a
Knife

Knife at the Knight's Girdle, and smote him therewith into the Body so deep, that he was all over Blood. The Knight feeling himself wounded, cried out aloud, whereupon *Valentine* came and rescued the Knight out of *Orson's* Hands, and said, Fair Knight, you have offered great Wrong to smite a poor wild Man in this rude Manner, who cannot speak a Word. With that, the *Proud Knight* began thus roughly to answer *Valentine*: Thou Miscreant, why didst thou not salute me? And therewith drew forth a Glave, thinking to have smitten him: *Valentine* observing it, drew forth his Sword, and struck at the *Proud Knight* with such Violence, that he struck him dead. The *Proud Knight* being dead, his Men fled with all the Haste they could to *Acquittain*, with Tidings of their Master's Death. Duke *Savary* hearing thereof, was greatly displeased, for he was his Cousin. When *Valentine* understood well of the Lamentation which was made for the Death of the *Proud Knight*, he instantly mounted and entered the City, where he lodged in a Burgeess's House, whereby it came to the Ears of Duke *Savary*, that he had slain his Cousin. Then the Duke commanded that *Valentine* and *Orson* should be brought before him; so being come into the Presence of the Duke, he began on this Manner: Friend, of whence are you? What Prince do you serve? Or be you a Knight, or no? Sir, said *Valentine*, I am a Knight, and owe my Du-

ty and Service to the famous King *Pepin* of *France*. Said the Duke, you have slain my Cousin. 'Tis true, said he, and so I should have done, had it been my own Kinsman; for he was of so high a Spirit, that he disdained to speak to any Man; and smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near killed him; which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a Stranger in the City, and am come hither to combat with the *Green Knight*; and also to behold the beauteous Lady *Fezon*, whom the World admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of Equity, for Strangers to pass up and down in Safety. Consider, I have shewed you the Cause of my coming. When the Duke heard *Valentine* say so, he said unto him, Knight, thou hast answered me well; and seeing my Cousin came by this, more by Pride, than Courage, I will pass my Sorrows over, and pardon thy Deed; but in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to combat the *Green Knight*, come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the Beauty for which you hazard your Life: Moreover, that you may see that you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen Knights to accompany you, and now arrived for the Love of the Lady *Fezon*, and to try their Valour against the *Green Knight*. Go, I say, to my Palace, salute my Daughter, as my Custom is to Strangers, before they venture their Persons in Battle with the
Green

Green Knight ; and having presented yourselves before her in the Sign of Love, you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold. Sir, quoth *Valentine*, I shall be ready to do all Rites and Customs ; and besides, I will obey you in all Things whatsoever you please to command.

This Conference being ended, the Duke went into the Palace, accompanied with *Valentine* and *Orson* ; having entered the Hall, where the Knights were assembled, *Valentine* beheld the Lady sitting amongst them ; and making his way unto her, with a courteous Behaviour, at last he saluted her thus : Lady, you whose Beauty and Fame is spread thro' the World, the Gods preserve thee from the *Green Knight*, who is not worthy to touch your excellent Lips. Moreover, dear Lady, I will let you understand, that *Pepin*, the mighty King of *France*, hath sent me hither to present unto you the most puissant Man that liveth on the Earth ; wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no Man, nor any Weapon, tho' he cannot speak ; wherefore I assure you, that the *Green Knight* is not able to withstand his mighty Force. Sir, quoth the Lady, I am much obliged to the King of *France*, and also to you, that have taken such Pains to present such a one unto me. But why is this worthy Champion no better cloathed ? For methinks he is of an excellent Person, well formed, strait, and of a pleasant Countenance ; and if he were washed
and

and bathed, his Flesh would be both white and soft. Lady, said *Valentine*, he never wore Garment till very lately, and then I caused this Jacket to be made; moreover, I assure you, that when he first came into *Paris*, he was quite naked, and his Flesh was so hard, that he feared neither Wind nor Cold. While he was speaking these Words, *Fezon* beheld him very wishfully, for she was in love with him. But *Valentine* again thus spake: Lady, for myself I must say something also; therefore know this, that only for the Love of you I have ventured in this Climate, to see if Fortune will so much favour me, that I may bear you away from all Comers, by Force of Arms; and yet fair Lady, one Thing more I have to say unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto myself, not to return again to *France*, 'till I have tried my Fortune with the *Green Knight*; and with him do I intend to cope before I depart hence; and either deliver him into your Hands as Conqueror, or suffer Death, as many have before me. Alas, Knight, said the Lady, put not yourself in Danger for my Sake, for methinks it is a Folly in any Man, to endanger himself for the Good of another. Again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my Love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate Days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed I mean to accomplish. Why then fair Knight, God be thy Speed; and therewithal drew forth

forth two Rings of Gold, giving *Valentine* one, and *Orson* the other. Also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcomed with great Feastings : Being set at the Table, *Fezon* still fixed her Eye on *Orson*, and *Orson* on her, with exceeding gracious Aspects.

Now in the midst of all their Feastings, the *Green Knight*, as his Custom was, came thundering at the Gates, only to have a sight of the Beauteous Lady *Fezon*; for you shall understand, that such were the Conditions between him and the Duke, that every Day it should be Lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without Contradiction. Being entered the Great Hall, his Manner was, to cry out with a loud Voice, saying, Valiant Duke of *Acquitain*, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the Love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, I have yet within my Palace sixteen Valiant Knights that mean to try their Fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. Then said the *Green Knight*, let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady *Fezon*. Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free liberty. Herewithal the *Green Knight* entred the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another; at last, when he had gone thro' them all, he began to speak to them in this Manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make Merry, for to Morrow will be your last; and know that it will fall out to your share to be hanged on
the

the top of my Tree, as many before you have been served. *Valentine* well marking his high Words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Knight, these Vaunts might as well have lain smothered in thy Breast; for I tell thee, this Day is come hither a Knight that will hold thee tack, more than any that ever yet encountered thee; and whereas thou triumphantly hast Conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead Corps a prey for ravenous Beasts. Now *Orson* understood that *Valentine* spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be the *Green Knight*, by whom so many valiant Men had lost their Lives; insomuch that he saluted him with a fierce Visage, and, whetting his Teeth, leapt from the Table, and taking the *Green Knight* by the middle, threw him upon his Neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at that Advantage, espying a Wall, threw the *Green Knight* with such Violence against the same, that all the Beholders thought he had broken his Neck, for he lay as Dead; and so set him down at the Table, as before; and in a Laughing gesture, made Signs, that he would bear upon his Neck three such as the *Green Knight*. At this sudden Action of *Orson*, all the Knights there assembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, said, now is he come indeed, that shall overthrow the *Green Knight*. But we cannot chuse but lament the woful chance that shall befall the Lady *Fezon*, for he cannot

cannot speak, and yet is worthy of all Honour amongst the Valiantest. The Lady on the other side, beholding his Valour, was instantly overcome with the love of Orson, that only Conquered her Heart, and left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the *Green Knight* was again recovered, and counting it a deed of Courage, began thus to say, Lords, this wild Man hath deceived my trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying a word: But I think good to let you understand, that in the Morning I shall be better provided; and to the End I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet on purpose higher and stronger than for any that have been vanquished; and thereon I will hang his beastly Corps for Beasts and Birds to make their prey.

C H A P. XIII.

How Orson Encountered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof; also how Valentine attempted to Fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORson perceiving the *Green Knight* was displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to Chatter, making Signs that he would meet him on the Morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his Hood, and threw it on the Ground as his Gage: Which
Valentine

Valentine seeing, spoke thus to the *Green Knight*: Sir, the wild Man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown his Gage; whereof, if your Stomach serve, I advise you to take it up. Whereat the *Green Knight* fretted so exceedingly, that he replied never a Word. Duke *Savary* being present, said unto him, Sir Knight, I well perceive that the Battle will grow strong between the wild Man and you; and I think he will hold you tough play: Wherefore if you chance to Conquer him, you may well report of your Valour throughout the World, for he hath tried some Part of his Courage already; and in Vanquishing of him, you need not stand in fear of any. The *Green Knight* hearing of that, began to be more enraged, and swore by *Mahomet*, That e'er the Morrow's Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his Strength, for he should never return again from the Field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: And with these Words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion. He being departed, the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady *Fezon*, making great Joy, and saying one to another, that the Day was come, that the *Green Knight* should meet with his Match. On the other side, Fame had spread abroad the worthy Act of *Orson*, the Savage, that Multitudes of People came to see and behold him; insomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut. *Orson* perceiving the People so abundantly to approach, and hearing the
Noise,

Noise, leapt up into a Window to behold them, so that they willing to see him, and he desirous to see them, at Night they all departed: and Supper being ended, they passed the rest of the Night in Merriments, and so to Bed. *Va'entine* being brought to his Chamber, went to bed, making Signs to *Orson* to lie down by him; but he not regarding his Kindness, laid him down upon the Ground according to his usual Way, and so passed away that Night. Morning being come, *Va'entine* and *Orson* went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady *Fezon*, accompanied with the other Knights, holding a dispute among themselves who should first Fight with the *Green Knight*. At last stood up a worthy Knight of France, called *Galeram*, and said, Lords, so you be pleased, I am the Man intends the first Trial; to this they agreed, and presently they armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave with Joy; and she to requite his Kindness, gave him free leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him out of all Danger, so that he may return as Conqueror. The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so took Horse, and hasten'd him towards the Tent of the *Green Knight*. The *Green Knight* perceiving from far his approach, set Spurs to his Horse, and encountered the famous *Galeram* so fiercely, that he smote him off his Horse to the Earth. The *Green Knight* seeing him on the Ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse, and took off the Helm from him

him Head, *Galeram* fearing nothing but present Death yielded, but all in vain, for without pity he first spoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the rest before. *Orson* perceiving that *Galeram* was put to Death, made Signs with his Hands that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any respite: but *Valentine* answered him again by Signs, that he should withdraw himself for a while; for he would first go try his own strength with him: Hereupon he put himself in Arms, and took his way towards the Beauteous Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him; being come before her, she grew wonderous sorrowful, and at last she spoke unto him in this Manner: Alas, fair Knight, what Madnes is this in you, to adventure your self for the love of such an unfortunate Lady as I? Well, if thou wilt run into Danger, go on; but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine Enemy, and so farewell. Having thus taken his leave, *Valentine* mounted, to take his way toward the *Green Knight*. As he was ready to put forth, he met a worthy Knight, who was likewise enamoured with the Lady, and thus began to say to him, Sir, have a little Patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. Friend, said *Valentine*, I freely grant your desire, go and return with Victory. The Knight's Name was *Tyris*, born in *Savoy*, a Man of great Birth and Living, but Riotously had run through his Means, leaving himself little,
save

save only his Horse and Arms: Having thus obtained leave of *Valentine*, he also took leave of the Lords there assembled, and so went to the Tent of the *Green Knight*; the *Green Knight* perceiving *Tyris* to Approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him. *Tyris* seeing him, said, Sir, presently Mount and Defend thy self, for I breath out Defiance against thee. The *Green Knight* hearing him say so, called for his Horse, which was presently brought unto him; and putting his Foot into the Stirrup, suddenly seated himself on the Saddle, and betook him to his Spear and Shield, preparing to take their Course at each other; but at the first Encounter, the *Green Knight* ran so furiously, that he smote *Tyris* quite through the Body, so that he fell down Dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his Neck, and hang'd him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the Death of *Tyris*, was wonderful sorrowful, yet taking Courage, he recommended himself to the Gods; having thus done, he put Spurs to his Horse, and took his way speedily towards the Tent: When the *Green Knight* espied him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the rest; wherefore he called unto him, saying, Knight, give Ear unto this I now shall say, seest thou yonder Tree? There shalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir, said *Valentine*, you have Servants enough of your own, send them,

them, for by me it shall never be fetched. By my Law, quoth the *Green Knight*, you shall either bring me the Shield, or else know this, you shall never Conquer me. When *Valentine* had well considered these Words he spake, as touching the fetching of the Shield, he Valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his Labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, and returning unto the *Green Knight*, in an angry mood, said, go fetch thy Shield thy self, for I cannot have it; wherefore accursed be that Magician that so fastened it; and an evil end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend, quoth he, shall I tell thee wherefore I sent thee; it was, for that this Shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such Virtue, that no Man, be he never so strong, can take it from the Place where it is fastened, save only he alone, by whom I shall be overcome; and for the doubt I stood in of thee; therefore I advise thee to return to the Place from whence thou camest, and save thy self, for seeing thee so fair a Knight, I am forced to pity thee, and take no pleasure in thy Death, from which thou canst not Escape, if thou fightest with me. Further, to the end thou shouldest not think I uttered these Words to abuse thy Patience, know this: That there is none living that can vanquish me, except first, he be the Son of a King, and next such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman; now if thou be such a one, thou mayst overcome

come me, if not, thou dost but shorten thy own Days by an untimely Death. At these Words *Valentine* took little pleasure, knowing that by this Relation he could not be that Man; but seeing that he was come to that enterprize, he would not return till he had tried his Strength against him, and therefore with a loud Voice he spake thus, Valiant and Redoubt Knight, I well understand I'm not the Man by whom you shall be Conquered; yet Whosoever I am, I'll not depart hence till I have Fought with you. By the Gods, quoth the *Green Knight*, then thou hast some secret Treason to Work against me, that thus thou runneth upon my Death wilfully: But e'er I part with thee, I'll make thee know the price of this thy Rashness. And therewithal leapt upon his Horse, bidding one of his servants bring him a Box of precious Balm; the Virtue of it was such, that what Wound soever he received, tho' never so mortal, it had Power instantly to heal up the Breach. After he had received it, he suddenly put Spurs to his Horse, and couching his Spear in his Rest, both ran their Course so furiously, that their Spears brake in many Pieces; and they suddenly bending themselves to the next Course, most valiantly drew out their Swords; where *Valentine* behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the *Green Knight* so full a stroak, that he cut him thro' his Armour, insomuch that the Blood issued out in abundance. He feeling himself Wounded, he with a blow struck away

a great piece of *Valentine's* Thigh, and having thus Wounded him, said, you may see I can wield a Sword as well as you I told you, that you would fall under my Hand; and anon I shall be fain to hang your dead Corpse on a Tree, as I have done the rest as came before you. Pagan, quoth *Valentine*, Vaunt not thy self over much, for as yet I am not conquered; therefore defend thy self; and there-with he gave him such a Blow, that he smote away a quarter of his shield; and the *Green Knight*, at the same Encounter, brake his Sword upon the helm of *Valentine*, felling him from his Horse: *Valentine* being always Valiant, suddenly recovered. The Pagan seeing him rise, drew a sharp pointed Knife, and threw it at him, but he seeing it come, started aside, so that it missed him. The *Green Knight* being thus unarmed, turned about his Horse, thinking to have recovered them again; but *Valentine* being on the Ground, and seeing a fit Opportunity, cut off his Horses feet, so that they came both tumbling to the Earth: Being on the Earth; he suddenly arose, and then they were both together (by the strength of their Arms) holding each other: But in short, the bickering was so Fierce, that they were both sore wounded: The Pagan quickly healed his with the Balm before spoken of.

This fight continued so long, that the Day began to shut in, and both grew weary: The *Green Knight* was vexed that he could not overcome him, and tho' he were even spent,
yet

yet he proudly bore it out, saying, Knight give over, for I perceive thy Weariness, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little Honour for me to Conquer thee: Go, return again to *Aquitain*, and rest there this Night, and report, that there never encountered me so Valiant a Knight as thou art. But meet me to Morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of thy Friends, for thou shalt never return. *Valentine* accepted the offer, and was glad thereof; so Mounting his Horse, he returned to the City. When Duke *Savary*, and his Lords saw him, they were joyful and received him in great Honour; amongst the rest there assembled, was *Orson*, who ran and caught him in his Arms, and kissed him: Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what Tydings from the *Green Knight*? Sir, saith *Valentine*, he resteth in his Pavillion, and I think he is of that strength and Courage, that there is not a Man living able to vanquish him. *Valentine*, quoth the Duke, you have escaped well, for never did any return, but all have perished; whereof you have proved your self a valiant Knight: Gracious Duke, said he, of my Conquest, I can make but small boast, but to Morrow there is appointed a new Tryal, and the Victory will light upon whom the Gods please to favour. Having ended the Conference with the Duke, *Valentine* was unarmed, and conducted to the Chamber of the Lady *Fezon*. The Lady was right Joyful to see him return with Life: By this

this Time supper drew on, and the Duke taking his place at the Table, caused *Valentine* to be set on his left Hand; for the Duke did Honour him in the highest Degree; Supper ended, *Valentine* withdrew himself to his private Chamber, and the *Green Knight* rested in his Pavillion, where we shall leave him, and speak of *Valentine*, who being in his Chamber, made many Complaints.

C H A P. XIV.

How Valentine took Advice, and sent Orson on the Morrow to fight with the Green Knight; and how Orson overcame him.

V*alentine* having appointed the Morrow to fight with the *Green Knight*; began to be troubled as he lay in Bed, still thinking on what happened the Day before. At last, when he had ruminated all his Imaginations, he began to resolve on this: I am not, neither can I be that King's Son that should overcome the *Green Knight*; for I can neither remove the shield he sent me for, neither was I nourished without the Breast of Woman. Again, I'm very doubtful of the Combat, and therefore stand wavering, whereon to rely. At last he began thus to think: What if *Orson* should be armed in my stead, and thereby try the worst of Fortune's wrack: Why? it shall be so. The break of Day appearing, he arose, and coming to *Orson*, he told him by Signs, that

that he should put on his Armour, take his Horse, and make towards the *Green Knight's* Pavillion, to fight with him, *Orson* understanding his intent, leaped and danced up and down joyfully; making Signs, that the Knight should never Escape; denying his Horse and Arms, desiring only a Club, such a one as he was accustomed to; and shaking his Head, made Signs that he would have no other Armour. *Valentine* seeing this, gave him to understand, that he must put on the same Armour, and ride on the same Horse, for that the Knight should not know but that it was *Valentine* that came against him. *Orson* understanding the subtilty intended, agreed to it; and being thus armed, contrary to his custom, he seemed personable, and made many Signs that he would overcome the *Green Knight* e'er Noon, without Mercy or Pity; and in these Signs he was so earnest, that he caused great Laughter. *Orson* thus prepared, took his leave of the Duke, embraced *Valentine*, and made Signs to stand in fear of nothing; for before he returned, he would bring the *Green Knight* either alive or dead. But before he took Horse, he went and took leave of the Lady *Fezon*: and espying her, would have run and kissed her; for by Signs he gave her to understand, that for the Love of her he would fight with the Pagan Knight. The Lady with a Smile, made a Sign, that she loved him well; wishing him to bear himself Valiantly; and at his return she would grant him Love: Thus,

G

havin
g

having taken his leave, he betook him to his Horse, and being gone from the Palace, there was nothing so much talked of as the wild Man's Combat with the *Green Knight*, whereat was much wonder: It was not long before *Orson* came to the Pavillion of the *Green Knight*, and smote the Top thereof with his Spear, signifying Defiance. The *Green Knight*, taking this rustick Salutation in great Scorn, swore by *Mahomet*, that he would lower his Pride before the Evening; and therewithal mounted on his Steed, and couching his Spear, he entred the Field, *Orson* seeing him in a Readiness, seemed to give back, as half afraid,



and presently having gathered more Courage, they encountred with such Force, that both Horses and Men fell to the Earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered, drew their words,

Swords, and laid one at the other fiercely. The *Green Knight* being fired with Anger, smote *Orson* such a Blow, that he cut the Circle of Gold on his Helm, and smote a piece of his shield quite off, and wounded him deeply, that with the outrage of the Stroke, his Sword fell out of his Hand. *Orson* seeing the Blood run down, was far more fierce, rousing his Eyes, and shaking his Head; at last he took the Giant such a pat on his Head; that he entered the Flesh, and bare apart thereof afore him, and his Sword sliding off his Head; took him on the Arm so powerfully, that the Blood followed in abundance: The *Green Knight* having his Balm, feared no Wounds, which made *Orson* think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, since he could heal himself so quickly: Upon this *Orson* threw away all his Armour and Weapons, and suddenly run upon him, and caught him fast by the Arms, and cast him on the Ground, took off his Helm, and held him down so, that the *Green Knight* did yield to his Mercy; *Orson* not regarding his Submission, would have taken away his Life, if *Valentine* had not come to his rescue, by Riding post to see the end of the Combat: Being come, he made Signs to *Orson*, that he should not kill him, which *Orson* obeyed: And at last *Valentine* began thus to speak to the *Green Knight*, saying, Proud Knight, you see that you are in the Hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present Death,

for look how you have done to the vanquished Knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree: so likewise you your self should be hanged on the highest Branch: Alas, quoth he, you seem to be a Man of pity, furnished with Courtesy; therefore my request unto you is, to spare my Life: No, quoth *Valentine*, that I shall not, except upon Condition: First, That you shall Renounce your Paganism. Secondly, you shall go with me into *France*, and tell King *Pepin*, that by *Valentine* and *Orson* you were overcome in single Combat: To all these Conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath, to perform whatsoever you have already spoken.

Then *Valentine* made Signs unto *Orson*, that he should rise, which he readily obeyed, but so, that he left nothing about him to make any further Resistance. Being upon his Feet, he spake thus to *Valentine*, Sir it was you that combated against me yesterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this Day also; but I see I am conquered by the Man, that in the Duke's Palace threw me on the Ground. True, quoth *Valentine*, the very same. Why then, quoth the *Green Knight*, I shall reveal unto thee one Secret more, and I beseech thee grant unto me my request, send this Knight, that hath Conquered me, unto yonder Tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield there fastned, then I'm well assured he is the Man that should Conquer me. Hereupon *Valentine* made a Sign to *Orson*, to fetch away that
Shield

Shield, who did as he appointed him ; and coming near the Tree, he stretched forth his Arm to take it down, and suddenly it leaped into his Hand, and so he brought it with him to the *Green Knight*. When he saw *Orson* have the shield, his Heart smote against his Sides, and throwing himself at his Feet, would have kissed them ; but *Orson* receiving Signs from *Va'entine* to the contrary, would not suffer him, but took him by the Arms, and lifted him up. Being upon his Feet, he spake thus, Alas, I of all others owe unto you all my Service, and all Reverence ; for now I'm assured you are both a hardy and a Valiant Knight, and amongst all other I confess that by conquering me, you have won unto yourself everlasting Fame. Moreover, this assure your self, that he that conquers me, can be no less than a Son of a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never Sucked the Breast of any Woman : And that this shall appear to be Truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister *Clerimond*, for she hath a Head of Brass that telleth her the Adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generation shall befall ; likewise, this Head shall continue speaking until such time as the most worthiest Knight of the World enter into the Chamber where it now standeth ; and he being once entred, the said Head shall lose its Virtue ; and is the only Man to have my Sister *Clerimond* to Wife ; wherefore fair Knight these Things thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would

wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and most renownedst Knight in the whole World.

C H A P. XV.

How Orson having Conquer'd the Green Knight, Valentine caused him to be Christened, and sending him to King Pepin, had knowledge of his Father and Mother by means of the Green Knight. How the same Night that Orson was made sure to the Lady Fezon, an Angel appeared unto Valentine, and of the Charge she gave unto him.

THE *Green Knight* having made this Motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a Ring of Gold, upon Condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: Which Ring *Valentine* accepted; and the *Green Knight* yielded himself a Prisoner, and is now going towards *France*, to accomplish that Oath which he before had made. *Valentine* having received the Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended to him. After this, the *Green Knight*, by Consent, was Crowned King of the *Green Mountain*, and there held great Estates: Presently upon his League of Friendship concluded, he gave command throughout his Host, that every Man should depart away from the Confines of *Acquitain*, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke *Savary's* Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and

and Orson took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of *Acquitain*, whereat was no little Joy ; and the Duke with all his Lords received him with great Triumph into the City. The *Green Knight* being thus brought Prisoner to the Duke, began to speak in this Manner : My Lords, you owe much Honour unto the Knight that hath conquered me. And further, I give you to understand for certain, that he can be no less than Son to a King ; and also, that he never sucked Woman's Breast, for if he had, he could not have been my Conqueror, for so it was ever said by the Brazen Head that standeth in the Chamber of my Sister *Clerimond*. Quoth the Duke, Well may this carry some likelihood of Truth, for he hath born himself very Valiant against you ; wherefore I think it my part to honour him with my utmost Endeavours. By this time is the worthy Train entered the Duke's Palace, where the Duke commanded his Daughters Presence ; and then he said unto her, Daughter, behold here the *Green Knight*, that hath for your love made spoil of my Country, and I was no way able to force him back, but only by this Valiant Knight that *Valentine* hath brought from the Court of King *Pepin*, who hath freed us of all our Fears ; Wherefore this is my desire, That as he hath conquered your and my Enemy, so he may also conquer your Love, whereunto I willingly agree. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for her self in this Manner : My Lord and Father,

you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no Reason I should resist, but do submit to your Pleasure; for if I should do otherwise, it would be great Disobedience. And again, my Lord, your promise is already past, that whosoever could vanquish the Pagan Knight, should for his Labour receive me for his Wife. Now, my Lord, the Day of my Deliverance is come, so then (according to your promise) you must deliver me to him, and I accept him as my lawful Spouse; otherwise I shall make void the Edict before gone throughout the World, and you thought false in your Promises. Daughter, quoth Duke, you have spoken right Graciously, and your Answer pleaseth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us; wherefore it is not amiss to know of the Conqueror, whether he will have you: if he agree unto this Match, I shall give him in Dowry half my Country. Hereupon *Valentine* demanded of *Orson* whether he would have the Lady *Fezon* to Wife? Who made Signs, that he would never have any other. Then the Duke caused to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them, and so their time was passed with many Diversions. These Things thus ended, *Orson* made Signs unto the Lady, that he would never lie with her till he had gotten the use of his Tongue, and that his Companion, *Valentine*, had Conquer'd the Love of the Lady *Cerimond*. Of which you shall hear more hereafter.

The

The Day being past with great Banquetings and Solemnity, wherein *Fezon* was assured unto *Orson*, the Night approached, and every Man betook him to his Rest: Amongst the the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* were Lodged most Richly; and in the dead time of the Night *Valentine* had the Apparition of an Angel appeared unto him, saying, '*Valentine* know this, that in the Morning thou



'speedily depart the Land, and take along with thee *Orson*, by whom the *Green Knight* hath been vanquished, and without further delay, get thee into the Castle of *Ferragus*, there you shall find the Lady *Clerimond*, by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art Descended'. This strange Vision drove him into a thousand Fears, and in great Melancholy passed he away the Night: The

Day being broken, he caused *Orson* to arise, being ready, they hasted unto the Duke's Palace, where he found his Barons waiting for him, and amongst the rest, the *Green Knight*; not long after entred the Duke; being entred, the *Green Knight* took Occasion to tell him the Time of the Day, and began to speak unto him in this Manner: Most Renowned Duke, I freely Confess my self vanquished, and withal, Renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlasting Peace with you, upon Condition that you Cause me to be Baptized. Knight said the Duke, well have you said, I grant your Request. When the Priest was come that should Baptize him, *Valentine* began thus to say: Lords and Gentlemen, May it please the Valiant Duke to grant me one Boon, which is this, that the Name of this Knight be call'd *Pepin*; it is the Name of the most mighty King of *France*, that nourished and brought me up from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto *Valentine's* Demand, so he was called *Pepin*; After the Baptism, the Duke made a Motion to *Valentine* and *Orson* for to wed his Daughter, the Beauteous Lady *Fezon*; but *Valentine* not allowing thereof, made this excuse, that both he and *Orson* had vowed to go to *Jerusalem*, e'er they did attempt any other Action, after the Conquest of the *Green Knight*. The Duke hearing this excuse, gave them leave upon this Condition, that *Orson* should take an Oath to return again into *Aquitain*, at his coming back
from

from thence, to this they both agreed. The same Hour also, the *Green Knight* took leave of the Duke of *Acquitain*, and went his way into *France*, to keep his promised faith to King *Pepin*: Before his departure, *Valentine* asked him for the Ring that he had promised; who gave it unto him, saying, Whatsoever he be that beareth this about him, shall never stand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of false Accusation: Then *Valentine* took the Ring and put it on his Finger; so *Orson* and he took leave and departed the way towards the Lady *Clerimond*, to find out the Castle of *Ferragus*; and the *Green Knight* likewise took leave for *France*. Much about this time *Blandiman*, 'Squire to the distressed Lady *Bellissant*, was arrived at King *Pepin's* Court, in the Habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King, he wondred at this his unlook'd for shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. Worthy King, said *Blandiman*, I am no Pilgrim, altho' I have taken that shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you have I taken this Habit: Wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the high and mighty Lady your Sister, that by Treason and false Accusations hath been banished her Country by the Emperor *Alexander*, and at this time liveth in great sorrow of Heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your Heart against her, and sought no way to relieve her misery.

C H A P. XVI.

How King Pepin came to know that Valentine and Orson were his Nephews; and how the Green Knight submitted himself according to his Promise.

Blandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand where his Sister was; *Blandiman* replied, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my Word never to discover it to any: But worthy King, if you doubt her Loyalty, I shall bring you a Man that will fight the Quarrel, to prove her Honesty. Nay, said the King, I have seen enough thereof, by the downfall of the Arch-Priest; also I have made great Enquiry to hear of her, but cannot: And, that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was banish'd; neither am I assured, whether she was delivered of that burden. My Lord, quoth *Blandiman*, know this for a Truth, that my Lady laid her Great Belly in the Forest of *Orleans*; mean while she dispatched me to get her the help of a Woman: But e'er I could return, she was delivered of two Sons, the one of which was carry'd away by a Bear into the Wood, but she never knew whither; but she followed so long, till at last I found her in a swoond upon the Ground: I coming to her, took her up, and comforted her as well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woe-
ful

ful Sighs she unfolded the Manner of the Loss of her Child ; and for the other, she had left it under a Tree. I hearing her say so, hasted to the Tree where I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child ; And thus, worthy King, have I related the whole Story of your Sister, and the two Infants. And no other Tydings have I but this, I'm that *Blandiman* that you gave to attend her, when she Married the Emperor. The King giving Ear unto this, said, Alas, *Blandiman*, thy Words strikes me into a thousand Fears : What should become of my Sister ? But seeing thou can'st tell no more, tell me how long ago this is what you have told me. My Lord, quoth he it was even that Day you met me in the Forrest of *Orleans*, and I related to you the Tydings of your Sisters Banishment. This struck the King in such Admiration, that he began to recollect his Wits, and then presently came into his Mind the finding of *Valentine*, and how by him *Orson* was Conquered in the same Wood. Then he began to think on the Story that *Blandiman* had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two Babes brought forth by his Sister ; wherefore he sent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what *Blandiman* had declared, saying, my Lords, I have long time Nourished and brought up in my Court a poor Child, and now it doth plainly appear he is Son to an Emperor, and my Kinsman : *Valentine*, whom I found in the Forrest, brought

brought forth there by my Sister *Bellisant*, in the time of her Exile: and *Orson*, who was likewise Vanquished by *Valentine*, to be his Brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*.

At these Tydings all the Court was joyful, save only *Haufray* and *Henry*, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their Hearts sorrowful, for above all other they desired the Death of *Valentine*, that next him they might work their Wills on their young Brother *Charlemain*, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will appear. But to return to *Blandiman*, who hearing the King speak so much of the Children, demanded of the King, if he knew in what Country they were. Why, said the King, one of these I have brought up in my Court, in such Fashion, that he is become a Valiant Knight, and by his Valour hath Conquer'd his Brother, being a wild Man, living in the Wood like a Beast, and one that did much damage to the Country there about; Having Conquered him, brought him to Court, where having liv'd some small Time, they both departed, and took their way towards *Acquitain*, to fight with a worthy Champion, called the *Green Knight*, and since their departure, I never heard what became of them. Sir, said *Blandiman*, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well, that near *Acquitain* I met two such, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these Accidents, caused

caused *Blandiman* to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it happen'd, that on the same Day the *Green Knight* arrived at *Paris*, as soon as he came into the presence of the King, he saluted him with great Reverence. The King seeing him in Armour, marvelled thereat, and demanded the Cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and whence he came: The *Green Knight*, replied again in this Manner: Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Knight, that for the Love of the Lady *Fezon*, Daughter to the Duke of *Acquitain*, have for one whole Year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my Subjection; and having him under me, I made a Truce with him for six Months, upon these Conditions: That if within that Time he found not a Knight that by force of Arms should Conquer me, I was to have his fair Daughter *Fezon* to Wife. On the other side, If I were Conquered, I should remove away my Siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing him any further Damage. So it is, that long I was fought withal, by diverse Valiant Knights, of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endureth Death, and there still hangeth upon a Tree: At last it fell out, that there came to me two worthy Knights, the one named *Valentine*, and the other *Orson*: *Valen-*
tine

time fought with me one whole Day, wherein he behav'd himself so bravely, that Night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tired, and weary: The next Morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow, *Orson*, armed in *Valentine's* Armour, entred the Field in a most fierce and disdainful Manner, offering me Defiance; I scorning any Competitor, advanced out my self against him: but little was my Strength, for in the End he overcame me, and would have taken away my Life, had not *Valentine* come in upon us, and rescued me, upon these Conditions, First, that I should forsake *Mahomet*, Secondly, That I should come unto you, and yield my self at your Command, and to stand to your Censure, either in Life or Death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called *Pepin*, and so is my Name. The King having heard all this long Story from the *Green Knight*, made this Answer, in the Presence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your company we are rightly glad; live with us in our Court, and be free, for I freely grant you your Life, and promise you further, That if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow thee with many fair Lands and Possessions. The King shewing himself thus Gracious, demanded of him where these Knights were, that had conquered him. Marry, quoth the *Green Knight*, I left them both at *Acquaintain*, with the Valiant Duke *Savary*, who holdeth them in great Respect as
any

any that are Remaining in his Court. Thus you may now perceive, that by the Words of *Blandiman* and the *Green Knight*, King *Pepin* had perfect intelligence of his Beauteous Sister, and his two Valiant Nephews. After all these Tydings happened, King *Pepin* made a solemn Vow, That he would go himself in Person into *Greece*, to tell the Emperor of these gladsome Tydings, and to take Order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

C H A P. XVII.

How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to carry these Tydings ; how he found Constantinople besieged by the Soldan of Egypt ; how the Green Knight justed with two Sarazens and overcame them ; of the Battle that was fought, and the Armies entring the City,

KING *Pepin* having put himself in a readiness to depart to *Greece*, went forth, and before much Time was spent, arrived at *Rome*, where the Pope received him joyfully ; but as he sat at Dinner, News was brought him, That the Soldan of *Egypt*, with a mighty Army had besieged *Constantinople* ; whereupon resolving to go to the Relief of it, he craved Aid of the Pope, who readily granted it, and Forces were immediately raised in all the Territories of the Church, who chearfully assembled themselves under so Courageous a General ; and so King *Pepin* coming to *Constantinople*

ple, he found the City close besieged, and the Citizens in great Fear of the Soldan's Army, betaking themselves to the City, keeping the same against all the Force of the Pagans. The Emperor was close confin'd in the City, by Reason of the long continued Siege, but when he heard Relief was come, he took Courage, and the Pagans were much alarmed; but the Soldan with big Words encouraged his Men, not only to subdue *Constantinople*, but *Rome* itself, much deriding the Valour of the Christian Army. But King *Pepin* resolved to fight his Way into the City, and sent Letters to the Emperor to make a vigorous Sally, at such Time as he should give the Onset,



and so march towards the Enemy. The Soldan, upon this, put his Men in Order, to discover the Number of his Enemies. The *Green Knight*, who was advanced before the Christian

Christian Army, with the like Intent on the other Side, seeing them coming by the Side of the Hill ; and knowing them to be Enemies, address'd himself to the Encounter, and break his Launce against the foremost ; then a dreadful Combat began between them, and in fine killed one and put the other to Flight. The King upon this good Success, charged the Soldan's Battle with great Fury, wherein *Myllon Daughler* slew the King of *Quile*, and three others, e'er he gave over the Field : This made the Soldan and his choice Men come up, and, and furiously set upon *Daughler*, who valiantly defended himself, till his Horse was wounded and fell under him : and there had been slain, but that the *Green Knight* rescued and remounted him : Then great was the Slaughter on both Sides, for the Emperor issuing out with his Army, the Infidels were in a Manner hemmed in ; and King *Pepin* pressing on, cryed, Courage, Noble Brother, and you shall have News of your Lady *Bellisant* : This made him encourage his Men to the utmost, crying for *Constantinople*, which so heartned them, especially with his own and King *Pepin's* example, that they fought like Lyons. The *Green Knight* and other Champions made a terrible slaughter, so that the Sarazens began to fall in rout, and fly ; but the King of *Scalvon* coming in with 50000 fresh Men, restored the Battle, which continued bloody and doubtful ; but King *Pepin* and the Emperor finding they were over-numbered, and the

Enemy

Enemy had fresh Succours, thought fit to retire into the City, which they did, and there being close begirt with a Siege, endured extream Famine, where we must leave them to follow *Valentine* and *Orson*, who for the Love of *Cerimond*, had adventured as you have already heard.

C H A P. XVIII.

How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle wherein fair Clerimond was; and how, by the brazer Head, they had knowledge of their Parents.

AFTER many Days travel, at last *Valentine* and *Orson* lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle, strong and impregnable; the covering whereof was of shining Metal, glittering in the Sun, that it drove *Valentine* into a Suspicion that it was it, whereunto the *Green Knight* had directed him to have a sight of the fair Lady *Cerimond*. At all Adventures he maketh towards the Castle, and at last entered into this Island by one of the Ports thereof: Being entred, he demanded who was the owner of that Castle, which appeared so Sumptuous to the Eye? Answer was returned, That the Castle was in the keeping of the fair Lady *Cerimond*, Sister unto the Giant *Ferragus*, and built by a mighty Man in substance, a Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent works done in this Castle

Castle, he caused one Chamber to be richly adorn'd, of which Chamber more shall be spoken of in its Place.

Moreover, it was told unto *Valentine*, amongst other Things, that in the Chamber stood an Excellent Pillar made by Art, upon which stood a Head of Brass, composed along time before, by the Necromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent Composition, that it gave Answer to any thing that was demanded: *Valentine* hearing this strange Relation of the Castle, was right glad; for now he was verily perswaded that this must needs be the very Castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the *Green Knight*, told him he should find his Sister, so highly praised of all Nations for her excellent Beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left Questioning any further, and went on his way, accompanied with *Orson*, to see if he could get entrance into this Castle. By this time they were come to the Gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were resisted by ten sturdy Knights, that kept the Gates Night and Day.

When he saw *Valentine* and *Orson* make Offer to enter, they said unto them: Lords, or whatever you be, with-draw your selves back, for into this Castle entereth none, of what Birth soever, without the leave and license of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. Why? (quoth *Valentine*) go tell her, and ask whether it be her pleasure we enter
or

or not. Hereupon one of them entered the Chamber where fair *Clerimond* was, and kneeling before her said: Lady, at your Gate



standeth two Gallants that would enter your Castle; they seem Fierce and Courageous, full of high Spirit, and Men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion of our Country: Now fair Lady, say, shall they have Entrance? Descend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a Window, to take a View of them, and let the Gates be surely kept, For I mean to Question with them my self. The Porter did as she commanded. Then *Clerimond*, that was well languaged, leaned out of the Window, upon a Cushion covered with Gold, and said unto *Valentine*: what are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady (quoth *Valentine*, with an undaunted
Courage

Courage) I am a Knight that travelleth this way, and would gladly speak with that Head of Brasse, that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as I understand) it resolveth all Doubts. Knight (quoth the Lady) upon these Terms you may not enter; but if you can bring me any certain Signs from one of my Brethren, either from King *Ferragus*, or the *Green Knight*, Lord of *Tartary*, then you may freely enter this Castle, and by no other Means: Yet you may enter, that is, by the Seneshal of this Place, with whom you may Run six Courtes with your Spear, to try your Valour; wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some certain Tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your Fortune in single Combat, as I have told you. Lady, quoth *Valentine*, against your Seneshal I dare adventure, For I had rather win my Entrance by Ponderous Blows, than by Entreats and fawning Speeches. This choice chose *Valentine*, rather than to show the Ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the *Green Knight*, to present to his Sister *Clerimond*. The Lady seeing his resolute Hardiness, suddenly fell in Love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brasse stood, and said unto it: What is that Knight of Courage, that would so gladly enter this Castle? Lady, quoth the Head; of that Knight you shall know nothing, until such time as you have brought him before me. *Clerimond*, at this Answer,

Answer, seemed very Sorrowful, for she was greatly in Love with *Valentine*.

C H A P. XIX.

How (when as Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the guard) Clerimond bewailed the Love of Valentine: And how he justed for the Entrance, and over-came the Seneshal.

C*lerimond* pondering in her Mind the Words of *Valentine*, being overcome with Affection, said in this Manner: Ah! *Valentine* is Valorous and Beautiful; and if I have power over the Head of Brass, I shall never take any other Husband but this Knight. Hereupon she sent for the Seneshal, and told him that this Knight would enter the Castle. The Seneshal hereat being enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your Love.

Seneshal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go Arm you presently, and so he departed to put himself in Arms; being Armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his Spear in his wrist, and withal issued out of the Gate in Readiness. The Lady got into a Window to behold the Combat. When *Valentine* saw the Seneshal to come toward him, he couched his Spear, and put Spurs to his Horse, they met so fiercely, that their Spears broke in Pieces: presently

sently having a new Supply, suddenly they met so Fiercely, that they fell to the Ground Horse and Man; but *Valentine's* Horse got up with his Master; *Va'entine* being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneshal: Rise up, and newly Mount your self, for there is no Honour in Conquering an Enemy at Advantage. Whereupon the Seneshal was freshly mounted, and new Spears given them again; then took they a fresh Career, and therewithal *Valentine* so encountered him about the Head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horse and Man down upon the Earth: The Seneshal finding himself in Danger, said thus unto *Valentine*, Knight, I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never in my Life found I a Man of thy Valour, wherefore I yield, and withal give thee leave to enter this Castle at thy pleasure, only upon this Condition, that you speak not unto the Lady *Cierimond* without my Leave.) Quoth *Valentine*, thou hast requested that which I cannot grant, and know it was for her Love I came hither, and though I never saw her before, yet are my Thoughts on Fire. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have spoken with her, and also with the Brazen Head. The Lady all this while standing at the Window, wondred what Conference passed between these two Champions, and at last thus said unto one of her Maidens: see how indiscreet this Seneshal is, to fight with such a valiant Knight, who long since might

H

have

have taken away his Life. When *Valentine* saw the great Pride of the Seneshal, and that he stood it out with him, being his Prisoner, he presently run against him another Course, and therewithal gave him so deadly a Stroke, that he ran him quite thro' the Body, so that he fell off his Horse dead; at which the Lady *Clerimond* was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the Gates, and that *Valentine* should be brought up unto her in the great Hall: When that the Lady beheld *Valentine* well, she came towards him, and said unto him in this Manner: Knight, you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant and courageous Man all the Days of my Life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your Valour and Chivalry, that you are descended from the Loyns of some Royal Stock: Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is *Valentine*, a poor Adventurer, for neither my self, nor my Companion, ever knew from what Stock we descended: he was nourished by a Beast in the Forest, and lived there like a wild Man, till as I conquered him by my Sword, besides, he never spake in his Life more than you see this Instant: Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get Knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the Love of you, being so fair a Lady.

CHAP. XX.

How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brother's Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen Head, which told him from whence he was descended.

Valentine having got free Entrance, by overcoming the Seneshal, at last he shewed the Ring that the *Green Knight* had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the Token, saying, Fair Knight, had you shewed this Ring when you first craved Access into this Castle, you had never met this Danger that you have now with such Difficulty escaped: But since it hath pleased you to try your Valour, I cannot better commend you, than admire your courageous Heart. Whilst *Valentine* was plac'd just against her, in whom she took great Delight, Dinner being ended, *Cerimond* arose from the Table, and taking *Valentine* by the Hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your Welcome, deserving to enter into my priviest Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein that Brazen Head standeth, which Head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no Doubt but it will tell you most joyful Tidings: Wherefore, both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Hereat *Valentine* grew exceeding joyful:

ful : First, that he should now understand that which he desired to know : Secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their Way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber : Being come unto the Door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber Door guarded in this Manner : On one Side a grim, fearful, and ugly shap'd Villain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his Neck, which offered to make Resistance : On the other Side of the Door stood a fierce Lion ; these two continually kept the Door, that none could enter in without the Lady's leave, or else fight with the Villain and Lion. *Valentine* perceiving these two Creatures to make Resistance, demanded of the Lady *Clerimond* the Meaning thereof ? Who answered, These two you see here are to keep the Door, that none may enter without fighting with them, and that divers have perished in their Presumption : And again, the Lion is of such Fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a King, and to such he shews himself very loving.

Lady (quoth *Valentine*) happen what will, yet I mean to try my Fortune with the Lion, and by main Strength caught him about the Body, whereat the Lion forsook him, and let him pass. *Orson* likewise assailed the Villain, and e'er he could get ready to lift up his Club of Iron, he took him by the Middle so strongly, that he threw him against the Wall ;
then

then he took away his Club, and gave him such a Blow, that he tumbled on the Ground, and had it not been for the Lady *Clerimond*, he had slain him in that Place. Being both thus vanquished, the Gates were opened, and they entered the Chamber, wherein they might see all the World could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Saphires, with a great Number of precious Stones : Within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, exceeding rich, of which two of them are Yellow as most fine Gold, a third more green than Grass, and a fourth more red than a Flame of Fire ; between these Pillars was a precious Stone, called an Emery, more rich than the Heart of Man can devise, in the midst of which stood the Head of Brass, set upon a rich Pillar. *Valentine* wondring at the Richness of these Objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publicly open concerning his Birth : At length when every Voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this Manner :

“ Thou famous Knight of Royal Parentage,
 “ art called *Valentine* the Valiant, of whom
 “ it may justly be said, there was never the
 “ like appeared before me ; thou art the
 “ Man, who of Right ought to marry the
 “ Lady *Cerimond* ; thou art Son to the Em-
 “ peror of *Greece*, and thy Mother’s Name
 “ is *Bellifant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*,
 “ who by wrong Suggestions is banished her

“ Country and Husband’s Bed : Know this,
“ thy Mother is in *Portugal*, in the Castle
“ of *Ferragus*, who hath had the Keeping
“ of her these twenty Years : *Pepin* is thy
“ Uncle, and the wild Man who hath so
“ long accompanied thee, is thy own
“ Brother ; you two were delivered by the
“ Empress *Bellissant*, in the Forest of *Orleans*,
“ and being brought forth, thy Brother was
“ taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by
“ her he was nourished in that Wood, a-
“ mongst her Whelps, and never sucked he
“ any other : For thy Part *Valentine*, thou
“ wast found the very same Day in that
“ Forest, by King *Pepin*, who hath nourished
“ thee tenderly; and brought thee up unto
“ Man’s Estate : Further, thus much I shall
“ also tell thee, that this thy Brother here
“ present, shall never have the Use of his
“ Tongue, till a Thread be cut under the
“ same, and then thou shalt hear him speak
“ plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast
“ begun, and thou shalt prosper, for my Time
“ is at a Period, since thou art come to enter
“ into this Chamber ”

Valentine marking all the Head had uttered,
fell upon the Bosom of his Brother *Orson*,
and *Orson* on his, and kindly embraced each
other. The Lady seeing all this, began thus
to break out in these Speeches : Alas, cour-
teous Knight, I of all others ought most to
be joyful at this your happy Arrival, for by
you

you I am freed of ten Years Heart's Grief, which I have undergone hitherto. Again, by this Brazen Head I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my Affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady, quoth *Valentine*, I accept you as my Wife, who was given me by your Brother, the *Green Knight*, that was vanquish'd by my Brother *Orson* before the City of *Acquitain*; only this I shall request, That as your Brother the *Green Knight* hath forsaken *Mahomet*, so you would do the like. Sir, quoth she, I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you do command me, and be obedient to your Will in every Point, as long as we live.

Thus were all the Inhabitants of the Castle filled with Joy, that the Brazen Head had declared unto him such good Tidings. After this, the Reputation of *Valentine* encreased more and more; but all his former Joy and Gladness was Suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother *Ferragus*, as hereafter more plainly will appear.



C H A P. XXI.

How the Giant Ferragus had Knowledge of that between his Sister and Valentine, by the means of one Pacolet a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

NOW you shall understand, that within this Castle where *Clerimond* was, dwelt a Dwarf (named *Pacolet*) which she had nourished and brought up of a Child, bestowing much Cost to have him taught in Schools. This *Pacolet* being of more Age than Stature, grew exceeding Witty, and at last studied the Black Art, and therein grew so famous in *Necromancy*, that by Enchantment, he had composed a little Horse made of Wood; in the Head of which Horse, he had so artificially conveyed a Pin of Wood, that every time he mounted on his Back to ride abroad, he would turn the Pin towards the Place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same Place without Danger; for the Horse could run through the Air, swifter than any Bird. This *Pacolet* being in the Castle, observed the behaviour of *Valentine*, and when he had Time, he went to *Portugal*, to tell *Ferragus*, what Matters had passed at the Castle. So he betook himself to his wooden Horse, and in a Moment of Time (setting the Pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his desired Wish, and related the Story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard this Tale, he grew exceedingly

ceedingly Angry against *Valentine*, for that he should have his Sister in Marriage: Also, he grew enraged at her, that she should grant her Love unto him (he being a Christian Knight) swearing by his Gods to take Revenge upon them both: But all this he dissembled to *Pacolet*, bidding him Return and bear his Message to *Clerimond*, that the Knight *Valentine*, who shall have her to Wife, is right Welcome, and that e'er long I will come in Person to visit them, accompanied with a Gallant Troop of Nobles, and then shall their Nuptials be Royally Solemnized: So *Pacolet* took leave, and got him on his Horse, and was in an Instant at home again. Being come, he presently went into the Presence of the most Virtuous Lady *Clerimond*, and said unto her: Madam, I have been in *Portugal* with your Brother *Ferragus*, who is glad of your choice with *Valentine*, and promiseth e're long to be here in Person, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady stood amazed, and at last began to Answer him thus: Ah *Pacolet*, is this true that thou hast told? Ah me, the Gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treason against me, for I am well assured he could never abide a Knight of *France*. nor any other that is a Christian: I am right angry that thou didst not acquaint me with thy Departure, for I had serious Business for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Christian Woman, one that of long time hath

had her abiding with my Brother *Ferragus*, in the Castle that he now holdeth.

C H A P. XXII.

How Pacolet hereupon made another expeditious Journey into Portugal, to see the Lady Bellifant, Valentine's Mother; his returning back, and the News that he brought.



THE Lady having ended her Tale, *Pacolet* made her this Answer: Lady, seeing you are so earnest, I shall for your sake make another Journey into *Portugal*, and before to morrow Mid-Day, I shall bring you Tidings whether she be there or no. *Valentine* hearing him say so, replied: That thou can'st not do, except the Devil be in thee:
The

The Lady *Clerimond* said unto *Valentine*: Let him alone, for by Art he hath provided, that he will Ride more than a thousand Miles a Day. Hereat *Valentine* marvelled much, and calling *Orson* unto him, he cut the Thread from under his Tongue, that hindred his Speech, which being done, he spake presently, where he related the Story of his Life led in the Forest, which held them the most part of the Evening. On the Morrow, according as *Pacolet* had promised, he was found in the Hall before *Valentine*, saying unto him in this Manner: Sir, I am Returned from *Portugal*, and have seen your Mother in good Health. Friend (quoth *Valentine*) thou art Right welcome, for it is she only I desire to hear of. Love (quoth *Clerimond*) be not too hasty, For if my Brother come not hither, we will go into *Portugal* to him, and then we shall have both our Hearts desire. Nay, surely, (quoth *Pacolet*) your Brother will come hither: Ay, (quoth the Lady), but I stand in fear of him, lest that he work some Treason against us; for this last Night I dreamed a fearful Dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I Dreamed I was in a great Water, in which I should have Perished, had it not been for a great Face that drew me out thereof; being out, I thought I saw a Griffin issue out of a Cloud, who with his Talons took me up, and carried me I know not whither. Love, quoth *Valentine*, give no Respect at all to Dreams, for they are but Delusions of

a melancholly Mind. 'Tis true, (quoth she) but they trouble me every Night. Having ended this Discourse, they entred into a fair Arbour, garnished with great varieties of Flowers, reposing themselves some few Hours in long Dalliance; where we will leave them; and you shall hear that the same Day arrived *Ferragus*, the Traitor, at the Castle of *Clerimond*.

The Lady hearing of his coming, presently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her; Sister, above all Creatures living, I have most desired to see you; tell me I pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother, is the Man. Whereupon *Valentine* saluted him with great Reverence. *Ferragus* said unto him: Fair Knight, Ye be welcome into these Quarters, for the Love of my Sister *Clerimond*; for seeing it is so fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the *Green Knight*, and sent him into *France*, causing him to be Christen'd, even so have I a great desire to be baptized, to become a Christian, and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all these Words which he had spoken; but under these fair Promises he smothered Treason; yet at last *Valentine* began thus to say unto him: Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Castle, for the space of these twenty Years, you have maintained a Christian Woman, who is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly see, her Name is *Bellisant*,

sant, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*. By *Mahomet*, said *Ferragus*, you say truth, and to the end your Eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into *Portugal*, so shall you rightly be informed, whether she be the Lady you seek after or no ; Gramercy, (quoth *Valentine*) and so *Ferragus* left him, and said unto his Sister *Clerimond* after this Manner : Sister, my Soul's Joy, I desire your Advancement more than any thing upon Earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your Espousal ; wherefore to knit up all at once, my desire is, that you would go with me into *Portugal*, and there, with the Consent and Applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to Solemnize your Nuptial-Day

C H A P. XXIII.

How Valentine and Orson were betrayed by the Treachery of Ferragus ; and how he committed them to Prison, with their woeful Lamentation.

F*Ferragus* having thus gotten their Wills to depart for *Portugal*, put all his Ships in a Readiness, and packing up all their Provision, they put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea, *Ferragus* fell from all his former Words of Comfort, and began to Plot the Death of *Valentine*

Valentine and *Orson*. In the dead time of the Night, when the two Brethren were at Rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken from their Beds, and committed them to Hands, muzzling their Eyes also, that they could not see: Now when *Clerimond* saw what was done to her Love, she fell into an extream Agony, and with watery Eyes began thus to vent her Lamentations: Alas, dear *Valentine*, our Joys are suddenly turned unto Sorrow, thou hast bought my Love at too dear a Rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in Danger of thy Life: Cursed be the Day of my Birth, for with Danger hast thou purchased my Love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? wrent Heart, weep forth my Eyes, when such a Valiant, Hardy, and most Magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my sake: Thou hast deceived the trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my Love: Thou hast robbed me of all Joy, and brought upon me an untimely Death. Further know this, that if you put to Death these two Knights, you carry to your Grave the Name of a Villain. Let them alone, their Death will work you small content: Or if there be no Remedy, spare them, and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea; for I would not live to see two such Innocents falsely put to Death without desert. Yea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with her Heart's sorrow she should have slain her self

self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate Fit, gave strict Command that she should be well attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a Word with either of the Prisoners; thus leaving her to Lament, and the Christians, both *Valentine* and *Orson* fast bound in Chains. *Valentine* perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how unkind hath Fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my Youth in Travel and Danger, only to find out the Parents that begot me, and see now, when hope had well nigh set an end to all my Sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the Hands of mine Enemies, that only seek my Death. Alas, Brother *Orson*, how suddenly are all our Joys blasted, and our Mirth turned into Mourning? On this wise complained *Valentine* and *Orson*, but all this while they were on their way towards *Portugal*, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of *Ferragus*. Being there arrived, Tidings were brought to the Lady *Belisant*, that two Christians Knights were come along with them as Prisoners. At which News she quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a sight of them: when she was come near unto them, and had well viewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children, quoth she, of what Country be you, and where was you Born? Lady, quoth *Valentine*, we be of *France*,
and

and Born not far from *Paris*: *Ferragus* perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave your Questioning, for except they Renounce their Faith, they shall miserably end their Days in Prison; and therewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with Bread and Water. This misery was not sufficient, but more than that, certain churlish Sarazens standing by, smote these two Children with their Fists and Staves.

After *Ferragus* had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Sister *Clerimond* unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear Tears, which made him thus say unto her: Sister, leave Weeping, for I swear by *Mahomet*, you have two long doted upon the Brazen Head, as well appeareth, in that you make your Choice with one of the contrary Religion: But change your Mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to Husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the *Green Knight*, next a Christian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I say therefore) and be ruled by my Direction, and I will raise your Fortunes, by Matching you to that puissant King of *Trompart*. Forget, I say, these two *French Men*, for thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the Head. Brother (quoth *Clerimond*) it becometh me to obey you; for I plainly see I must let go the Thing I cannot have; for
whereas

whereas Force constraineth, Fear hath little Power, and necessity often preventeth Truth. These Discourses finished, *Ferragus* departed with his Queen and other Attendants, and entering the Great Hall, with very much Honour and Reverence they received the Lady *Clerimond*, the Queen thus saying unto her: Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady (quoth *Clerimond*) I give you a Million of thanks, but know this, that I am Right heavy, and for the two Christian Knights that are come hither under Coullour of Friendship and Love, brought over by my Brother's fair Promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatned to Death. This Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and split-teth my very Heart in sunder. Alas, Sister, pitty me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband; amongst all Men living, he is the Comliest, Valiantest, and hardest Knight that liveth upon the face of the Earth. Again (dear Sister) by force of Arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my Love: Wherefore Lady pity my distressed Estate, and let me see that Christian Lady which you so long have kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady *Bellissant* said thus unto her: Lady, what is your Will with me? Speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then thus, I bring you joyful Tidings, and yet the
end

end of my Tale will be as sorrowful as the beginning is joyful; know this, that I am not ignorant of your Estate and Dignity, for you are Sister to *Pepin* King of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*, who wrongfully banished you his Country: Soon after your Exile, you were delivered of two fair Sons in a Forest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true: Nay Lady, your Children, are both alive, and I can tell you where to find them. At these Words *Bellisant* fell into a Swound for Joy; *Cerimond* quickly recovered her again, and then the Lady said unto her: Fair Damsel, how came all these Things to your understanding? Then *Cerimond* related the whole Story: how *Ferragus* her Brother by Subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. *Bellisant* hearing her two Children were imprisoned by *Ferragus*, made great Lamentation, insomuch that the Wife of *Ferragus* entred the Hall, to understand the Cause of their mournful Clamours; *Cerimond* told the Queen all from point to point. Well, said the Queen, be appeased, and dissemble the Cause from the King, for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him rather so much the worse, then better affected, either to them or you.

C H A P. XXIV.

How Pacolet, the Dwarf, comforted the two Ladies.

AS these three Ladies were conferring about this Matter, into the Chamber came *Pacolet* the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden Horse. When *Clerimond* saw him, she wept bitterly, and said, Alas *Pacolet*, what Injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldest thus rob me of all my Joys at once? For I am well assured that thou mightest have given me warning of all these Miseries. Lady (quoth *Pacolet*) be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am Ignorant of all that hath betided you, but seeing you have began these bitter Pickerings, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake me, but I will find a Remedy for you to revenge your self, and to that purpose, I here Vow all my Service unto you and *Valentine*, while Life doth last. Friend (quoth the *Lady Bellisant*) if thou can'st but free my two Children out of Prison, I shall acknowledge my self highly indebted to thee, and I will recompence thy Labours every way. Lady (quoth *Pacolet*) no more take you care, but comfort your self, e'er long you shall well perceive my crafty Work to take such effect by my Art, that you shall have Cause to remember me while you have a Day to live.

C H A P.

C H A P. XXV.

How by Art, Pacolet set free Valentine and Orson from the Prison of Ferragus, and conducted them out of his Confines, with their Mother and fair Clerimond.

IT chanced that one Day *Ferragus* made a great Feast for all his Nobles, which Day they passed in such Revel and Mirth, that the Night growing late, they all betook themselves to Rest. Being all at Rest, *Pacolet* was still watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whose Gates were Brass, and surely locked, by his Enchantment the Gates flew open, and he entred therein. And he came unto the door of the Prison, where the Ladies two Sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the Door, the Locks broke, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark Dungeon, and hearing the door open were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present Death; and at last *Valentine* began to weep, but *Orson* said unto him: Take Courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for Death: And since it is so, he that first entereth here to lay Hands upon me, shall dearly pay for his adventure: With that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar that lay thereby: but at last *Pacolet* spoke unto them, saying, Lords, Fear me not,
for

for I am come to set you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no Noise, but follow me, and before the Morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother. *Valentine* at this Speech rejoyced greatly, but *Orson* beholding him with an Austere look, would not give any credit to his Words. *Pacolet* at the fierce look of *Orson* was much astonished, inso-much that he gave back, but the Words of *Valentine* he was much comforted, and *Orson's* Fury abated.

After this, *Pacolet* led them to the Chamber where these two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful Tears. When he came unto the Door of the Chamber, it was locked, but he did easily open it. After they entered in, *Pacolet*, so wrought with his Charms, that all that was thereabouts fell into a heavy and deep Sleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber where the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly falling into a swoon, spake unto them never a Word: But the Lady *Clerimond* pitiously said thus unto *Valentine*: Alas (fair Knight) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the Love and Joy of you is fallen into this Extasie. Then *Valentine* embraced her, and took her up in his Arms; and *Orson* also clasped her about the Middle, saying unto her, sweet Mother, speak unto me, and then he kissed her tender Lips, but all this while she spoke never a Word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the Earth
in

in a swoond, and there lay panting for Breath some Time, while the fair Lady *Clerimond* stood over them, bewailing this strange Accident: At last coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them Weeping: Alas, my Children, for your Sakes have I suffered more pain and Anguish then ever poor Woman was able to undergo, and you two the only Cause of these my grievous Passions, but since the Gods have so ordained, that I may once see you, and Embrace you before my Death, all my Griefs are vanished, and become no Burden unto me: But tell me, how you have been preserved ever since your Birth, and in what Country, and with whom have you remained! for it would please me to hear the Event thereof. At last, she having ended her Words, *Valentine* began the pitious Story of all their Miseries, even to that present Hour. *Valentine* having finished his sad Tale, by which the Empress *Bellsant* clearly knew that they were both her own Children, wailing with many more Tears then before, she was like to have fallen into a swoon again, but *Pacolet* prevented her, who was at that Instant in the Chamber, saying unto her: Lady, leave these Lamentations, and let us think how we may depart from *Portugal*, and so rid us out of the Subjection of King *Ferragus*. Alas, said *Clerimond*, my Love, remember the Oath that you have made unto me, to make me your Wife. Dear Lady (quoth *Valentine*) that I will perform, but at this present, the Love I

owe

owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near Heart.

These Words of *Valentine* being ended, *Orson* said unto *Pacolet*, Go open me the Door of *Ferragus*, and with these Hands I shall work his final Downfal and Overthrow. *Pacolet* answered, Come, go along with me, and I shall gladly open it to fulfil this your Desire. But know this, if you Murther him, you shall lose the Love of my Brother the *Green Knight*, who may divers and sundry ways do us displeasure. Quoth *Valentine*, you say Truth, and I agree unto this your wise and good Motion, for I would not have you guilty of such a Crinze, as the Death of your Brother, for to gain the World.

At this very Hour they departed the City, and *Pacolet* opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready Rigged, and having a fair Gale of Wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*; whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasures.



C H A P. XXVI.

How Valentine and Orson escaped the Castle of Ferragus, and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitain.

Valentine being come, and safely arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of *Ferragus*, fearing lest he should follow them, and put them into fresh Dangers. Therefore to prevent all Occasions of further Mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present to Victual their Ships afresh, and also provide good store of Ammunition, to be in Readiness upon all Occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any Suspicion: Being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother *Bellissant*, and the Lady *Cerimond*, saying, That he would suddenly depart, from *Greece*, towards *Constantinople*, to see his Father the Emperor, who, without any just Cause, had banish'd his Mother. In this agreed both the Ladies, with *Orson* and *Pacolet*.

The next Day they took Shipping and went on their Voyage, and at break of Day, the Jaylor (according to his accustomed Manner) went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their Allowance of Bread and

Water

Water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone; he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him: Great King, Mercy, for this Night I have lost the two Christian Knights that you had delivered to Prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared, and said: O King, a greater mischief than this has likewise happened this Night, for the Christian Woman whom you have kept so many Years, is this Night escaped away, and hath carry'd along with her your Sister *Clerimond*. *Ferragus* understanding these bad Tidings, all enraged, began to tear his Hair, like a mad Man amongst his Barons; and suddenly causing them to be armed, he made them to pursue and follow them: So he betaking himself to his Club, issued out the foremost.

He was a mighty Man, who was in Stature about thirteen Foot in Height. Being out of the Town, he calling his Men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass he met withal, but he demanded Tidings of them, yet he could not hear of them; for *Pacolet* by his Art was too subtle for *Ferragus*. At last, being tired with pursuit, he swore that he would besiege the Castle of *Clerimond*, for he did think assuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he swore by *Mabomet*, that he would either find *Clerimond*,
I and

and all her Company, or else he would make all *Christendom*, shake and so departed the Castle.

C H A P. XXVII.

How King Ferragus assembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon Valentine, and his Sister Clerimond, and how he followed them into Aquitain.

WHEN *Ferragus* had long laboured, and could hear no Tidings of the Christians, and his Sister *Clerimond*, he was grieved, and in his Fury sent for all his Men of War on every side, presently to assemble themselves on board of Ship, and follow *Valentine*, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had spent many Days, and affected nothing they returned every Man to his Home, and rested from their fruitless Toil. Whilst *Ferragus* and his Forces were thus scowring the flowing Seas, *Valentine* and *Orson* were entered the City of *Aquitain*: Being there, they assembled their Estate, and as private Persons, lodged in a House of a Burgess of the Town. *Valentine* would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke *Savary*, but *Orson*, thereunto would not agree, for he having a further reach of Policy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by small Experience, that Women are unconstant, therefore hearken to my Advice, let us only see and try
how

how the Lady *Fezon* standeth affected towards me, and herein we shall try her Constancy. Brother (quoth *Valentine*) I shall willingly agree with you. Then *Orson* took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entred the great Hall, taking *Pacolet* the Dwarf for his Page. When he came to the Duke, he saluted him with all Reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took him to be *Orson* that thus demeaned himself, but after finding by his Speech he was like to be deceived, he said: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly Adventure to do you service in any Manner you will imploy me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered Service, and will give you Sallery enough to content you, insomuch that if you will not depart my Service before I give you leave, I shall give you such Riches, that all the stock you came from, could never Raise. Thanks great Duke, quoth *Orson*, for your liberal Heart, and I here Vow e'er I depart, to deserve your Love and Liberality.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to visit his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay one Hundred and Fifty Pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. *Orson* thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of his Preferment, and always so carried himself at Meat, that every Man delighted in his Company, Amongst the Rest, the fair Lady *Fezon*, that was sworn his Wife, grew wondrous heavy

1 2

and

and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was *Orson*, whom she had beheld; and thus passed forth the Dinner time. Dinner being done, *Orson* took his leave for that Time, and returned to his Lodging, where his Mother and the Lady *Clerimond* had taken up their Residence. *Orson* being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole passage between him and the Duke, which when they heard, they much rejoiced thereat; but his Joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that *Ferragus* had sent Messengers to the Duke of *Acquitain* to Proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome News, presently provided both Men and Provisions, to Resist so proud an Enemy. *Ferragus* according to his purpose, suddenly arrived before *Acquitain*, even in the very same place, whereas his Brother the *Green Knight* had pitched Pavillions, when that *Orson* became his Vanquisher; by this Means much hurt redounded unto the Country, and Provinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens Army lay in Readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious Continuance, to subdue, and over run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this Imagination, (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of *Acquitain* being of a Magnanimous Courage, assembled all his Men of War; and being thus put in a Readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town, venturing to raise the Siege.

Siege. Amongst the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* made their appearance, being also accompanied with little *Pacolet*, but these three were not known unto any at that Time: Where we will now leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

C H A P. XXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitaine was taken Prisoner in the Battle by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the help of Pacolet.

THE Duke of *Aquitaine* calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present Battle on the Morrow;



so calling up all his Forces, and placing them in a Readiness, there happened a bloody Battle

tle before the City of *Acquitain*, and many a brave Leader on both Sides there, lost their Lives. The Giant *Ferragus* himself was amongst the thickest, gathering himself as near as he could under the Standard-bearer. The chief Men slain in this Battle, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, *Baudumain*, *Bondry*, *William Galeram*, *Anthony* the good Marshal, and *Gloriam* the hardy; all near about the Duke of *Acquitain*, and they that had the chief Command throughout his Camp. This happening, the Christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was begirt with Enemies, so that none might come to Succour him; yet in the midst of these Dangers, he bare himself most Valiant, and still cried, *Acquitain, Acquitain*, my Noble Hearts fight on for *Acquitain*; but in the End, all little availed, *Ferragus* having once gotten a sight of him, came near, and at last took him Prisoner, and led him to his Pavillon. *Ferragus* having thus bestowed the Duke, came up again to the Battle, which struck such an amazement into the Hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the Field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. *Valentine* and *Orson* seeing them thus to waver, came to them with all the Speed they could, and cried to them with a loud Voice: Valiant Men of *Acquitain*, shew your selves Men, Run not away in time of Extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your Reproach, be hardy and couragious;
once

once again let us try the Fortune of the Day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the People began afresh to gather up their scattered Forces, and turned them once more on the Sarazens, with a double Courage. By this time Tidings was brought into the City; that the Duke was taken Prisoner, at which ill News the Lady *Fezon* lamented more than all the rest; saying with a heavy Heart, shedding Tears: Alas, my Father! now is your Life in hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no hope of any Mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left a dejected Orphan. Alas *Orson*, my Love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much disturb me, for if you were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his way with his Sword. *Orson* on the other side was not idle, for he had taken an Oath that he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his Body amongst the rest. *Pacolet* the Magician and Dwarf, promised *Orson* aid and assistance at need; and thus all were busied and nigh hand wearied, *Orson* put Spurs to his Horse, and ran violently thorow the Battle, and escaped: *Orson* and *Pacolet* being past Danger, hurled away their own Shields, and hanging about their Necks the Shields of the *Sarazens*, set forth

I 4

with

with the Image of *Mahomet* in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite thro' the Camp of the *Pagans*, for *Pacolet* could speak their Language right well. Now are they come unto the Pavillion of *Ferragus*, where the Duke lay in Bands, thinking to have released him: But *Pacolet* perceiving the Number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his Charms into a deadly Sleep: Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke and said unto him. Come with us presently, mount this Horse, for we are come to set you free from the Power of *Ferragus*; if you doubt what I am, I am the Knight which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to Question me, neither fear the Power of all the *Pagans* here assembled, for I will surely be your Guide throughout the wicked Rout. Knight, quoth the Duke, you are a welcome Man to my distressed Hands, and therefore for your dangerous Enterprize, in working my Deliverance, I shall give you my fair Daughter *Fezon* in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I had given her not long to a Knight but he was wild and Savage, and he never had the use of his Tongue, but by Reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my Daughter Husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy Noble Act, and with her I freely give thee half of my Dukedom. Thanks, quoth the Knight, such a Gift is not to be refused; but let that pass,

pass, and let us make Ready for our Escape, that we may Return unto our discomfited Forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again thro' the Camp of the Enemy, without disturbance; all this while was *Valentine* in the Army, demanding what was become of his Brother *Orson*, but he found no Man could tell him any Tidings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing very much that he had been slain in the Conflict of the Battle.

Thus passed *Valentine* from place to place, to find out his Brother *Orson*, and with a resolute Mind rushed afresh into the Battle, and as a Man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand before him: *Ferragus* espying him so Valiant, came up to close him, and having gotten him once in chase, never left him, until he had slain his Horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, *Ferragus* siezed on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and Foot, taking an Oath by *Mahomet*; that he should not escape from Death, though there were not a Man more to be had throughout the whole Land; but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading his Prisoner *Valentine* fast bound along the Field, *Orson*, *Pacolet*, and the Duke of *Acquitain* set upon him, *Orson* crying out, let him not escape us; and therewithal put Spurs to his Horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan *Ferragus*, that both he and *Valentine*, his Pri-

soner, fell to the Earth; the Giant *Ferragus* quickly regained his Feet, and left *Valentine*, who fearing, began to run away. *Orson* espying him, cried out, Brother, return again, and fear nothing; hereupon *Valentine* was new mounted: When the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their Courages again increased, their Forces doubled, and with joy of Heart they cried out aloud, *Long live the Duke of Aquitain*. This sudden Noise much amazed the Sarazens, insomuch that *Ferragus* was glad to flee, and raise his Siege: When the Men of *Aquitain* heard of the Retreat, they recovered themselves again into the City. The Battle being thus ended, *Valentine* and *Pacolet* returned to their Lodgings; but *Orson* went along with the Duke to his Palace, whether being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter *Fezon*; being all assembled, he called *Orson* unto him, demanding of him his Name: Sir, quoth he, I am called *Gregory*. Then said the Duke thus before them all, Lords, I give you to understand, that above all Men living, I am the most beholden to this Knight, both for my Life and Liberty. And as for you, Daughter *Fezon*, it is my pleasure, that above all Men, you accept this Knight for your Husband: Daughter you have Cause to love him well, for by him I remain a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled agreed willingly hereunto, affirming that she could do no less than to submit to her Fathers Will, and the

the rather considering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: *Orson* hearing all this, still concealed himself, till he had further assayed the Constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, acquainting his Brother *Valentine* what he had purposed to do, as ensueth in the next Chapter.

C H A P. XXIX.

How Orson tryed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he Married her.

O*Rson* having a desire to try the Constancy of *Fezon*, at last replied thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the Honour you have vouchsafed me, I rest ever thankful for the same; but for your Daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected toward me, and likewise inclin'd to make choice of such a Man as is of equal Birth with hers; and therefore if it please you, let her Answer for her self. With these Words he entred into the Chamber of fair *Fezon*, and setting down by her, he took her by the Hand, and said unto her: Lady, your Beauty hath so enlarged my Heart, that without your Favour and Love, I am an unfortunate Man: Your Father is willing that I shall enjoy you, if you are so dispos'd, then may I justly vaunt, that I have won the fairest Lady living, and will prove a constant Knight whilst I have
Breath;

Breath; if you consent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight, (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost; it is true, I love all Knights, yea, all good Men too, in the rule of Honour; but as for him whom I intend to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? But fair Lady (quoth *Orson*) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you; Sir, (said she) it is Reason that I obey my Father, but if it be so that my Father constraineth me to break my Faith, and forsake him that vanquished the *Green Knight*, I will leave my Father, rather than once offer to break my Faith. Lady, quoth *Orson*, I wonder how you can set your Affections on such a Man, for he is of a wild Nature and Disposition; besides as your Father reporteth, he is Dumb, and cannot speak a Word. True, quoth the Lady, yet Love learneth me to Love him with a faithful Affection, to whom my Faith is already fixed; and therefore stay your Suit, for I will never alter, nor change my Mind from him.

Orson hereat grew wondrous joyful, to hear the wise Answer of *Fezon*, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke, saying, Great Duke, I am returned from your Daughter, for she hath given me an utter denial, saying, she will never have no other Husband than he that conquered the *Green Knight*. Quoth the Duke, care not for the denial, for she shall not Rule her own will, but be you a
little

little patient this Day, and I will talk with her my self. Thanks mighty Duke, quoth he, I am much beholding unto you, and so left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his Brother *Valentine*, to whom he related the whole Matter of his Proceedings with the Lady *Fezon*. Brother, said *Valentine*, you now know and find her faithful; but let us go together to the Palace, for I am assured the Duke will give good Entertainment, Brother, said *Orson* do as you please: *Valentine* cloathed himself in rich Apparel, and *Orson* put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into *Acquaintain*, and thus accompanied with *Pacolet*, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter, in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my Command thus, in rejecting the Knight, of whose Love I have made sufficient Trial, for he hath saved my Life? Father, quoth the Maiden, I pray you to sollicite me no farther in this Matter, seeing assuredly that I have given my promise to him that vanquished the *Green Knight*: What greater shame can there be than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the Danger light upon you, and let me be the Innocent. As they were thus discoursing the Duke espyed *Valentine* and *Orson* coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated; *Orson* having

having saluted the Duke, passed towards the Lady *Fezon*, who received him with a smiling Countenance, and said unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not now come in as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth *Orson*) I have learned to speak since I was with you last, and am the very same Man that yesterday courted you in your Chamber: All which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So *Orson* went into the Chamber, and put on rich Apparel: Being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and said, Son, pardon my Rashness, in that I would have given away thy Love to another, for I was fully perswaded that thou wouldest never have returned. Sir, (quoth *Orson*) I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had spent their Time, since their departure? *Orson* told him their whole Progress, and what Dangers they escaped, and withal, how they were the Sons of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Bellisant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, whom they had lately found in *Portuga*'. The Duke hearing that their Descent was of Royal Blood, was glad thereat, and said: You are worthy of all Honour by Reason of your Birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperor, and your Uncle King *Pepin*, are so hardly besieged by the Sarazens, and that unless speedy Aid be sent unto them, they will be forced to yield

yield themselves. *Valentine* giving good Ear unto this Relation; grew exceeding sad, but *Pacolet* at last put him somewhat out of the Dumps, and said, leave off your Sorrowing, for e'er to Morrow Night I shall send you to *Constantinople*. But (quoth *Valentine*) it must be then by the Devils Means. Sir, said *Pacolet*, mount you upon my Wooden Horse, and try the Event that will follow after. *Va'entine* answered, that will I do, for I desire nothing so much as the sight of my Father, whom I never saw. *Va'entine* on the Morrow prepared to depart; but before his departure, the Duke Married his Daughter unto *Orson*, in the Presence of the Lady *Bellisant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, with the consent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: And in this Assembly there was a Spy, who observed all the Proceedings, and gave Intelligence thereof unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* had received these Tidings, he vowed by *Mahomet* to be revenged on them all, but especially on *Pacolet*, for stealing away his Sister *Clerimond*, whom he so much loved, and ranked her among the Christians.



C H A P. XXX.

How Ferragus the Giant strengthened his Forces by the Aid of King Trompart, and the Enchanter Adrimain.

F*erragus* being out of hope to get Revenge on the two Knights, and his Sister *Clerimond*, called unto him a Messenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State especially one of them was to King *Trompart*, of whom he desired Aid against his Enemies; all which, if he could speedily accomplish, he would give unto him for his Wife, his Sister *Clerimond*. At the farewell of his Letter, he desired him to bring along with him the Enchanter *Adrimain*. Here leave we the Giant, and return to *Valentine*, who by this time is taking his leave for *Constantinople*. But in the End he said thus unto the Duke, and *Orson* his Brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely *Clerimond*. *Valentine*, quoth the Duke, take you no thought for her, for I shall have a Fatherly Eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter *Fezon*.

Valentine having taken leave, at last came to *Clerimond*, who, loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his Brother *Orson*, who said thus, Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King *Pepin*,
and

and tell them e'er long I will visit them. Brother (quoth *Valentine*) I shall Remember you, and so departed. *Orson* still remained in the Palace, but *Valentine* had a Duty yet more to do; namely, to take his leave of his Mother: But when she clasped him round with her Arms, she was not able to speak: *Valentine* perceiving her Natural Affection, Re-comforted her in the best Manner he could, but all was in vain.

C H A P. XXXI.

Of the pitiful Tale the Empress made to Valentine her Son, before his farewell into Constantinople, and what Speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

V*alentine* being overcome with the Lamentations of his Mother, at last said thus unto her: O Mother, leave off, be not so careful of me, for if I escape Danger, I shall gladly see you here again; in the mean space take care of my fair *Clerimond*, and let her be assured of my Loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been basely and falsly banished my Husband's Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperor, and also to my Brother King *Pepin*, and say unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a Man breathing, that

that will but once open his Mouth to the contrary, Fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted Chastity. Mother (*quoth Valentine*) all this, and more, I shall perform, and e'er many Months have run their Course, I shall cause my Father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his rash Proceedings. So now he takes his last farewell of his dear Mother, with his charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send *Pacolet* to bring Tidings of all that had happened.

Now taketh he his way to the lodging of *Pacolet*, whither being come *Pacolet*, made ready his Wooden Horse, and mounting *Valentine* behind him, turned the Pin the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that e'er the Morrow at Noon, they were in the sight of *Constantinople*. *Valentine* was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of *Pacolet* the Enchanter, came that Night to the great Hall, where the Emperor accompanied with King *Pepin*, sat both at Supper. *Valentine* being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the *Green Knight* sitting at the Table, with the Emperor and King *Pepin*, espied *Valentine*, and knew him, so did King *Pepin* take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperor; great Emperor, behold here one of our own Blood, a valiant Knight, and your own lawful Son. The Emperor hearing this
was

was much amazed, and rising from the Table, made towards him and kissed him: Then the *Green Knight* took him in his Arms, and embraced him, and lastly King *Pepin* likewise. But the Emperor his Father, was greatly ashamed at his fact, in Banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant *Blandiman*, who well observed *Pacolet*, ever since he saw him in *Portugal*, and at last he went unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady *Bellisant*: *Pacolet* satisfied him in all his Demands, so that exceeding great Joy and Gladness was heard about the City for the Life of *Valentine*, and People came from all Parts to behold the Emperor's Son, the valiant Knight. *Valentine* seeing such Recourse of all Estates gathering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my Person, I cannot yield unto you any other Recompence but Thanks, and especially to my Uncle King *Pepin*, who hath ever fostered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had perished, by Reason of a sharp Edict published by my Father, who by the false Suggestion of a dead Traitor banished my Mother from his Bed and Country. Wherefore to clear her Innocency, I (as her lawful Son) offer my Body in Combat against any false Traitor whatsoever.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXXII.

How Valentine and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners in the Battel of Constantinople, by the Soldan Moradin and his Men.

WHEN the Emperor perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Empress, he wept for Grief, and said thus unto his Son: My Son, I have no doubt of thee to be my Son, neither of thy Manhood, in offering to Revenge her Wrongs upon the Traitor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant, in the presence of thy Uncle *Pepin*, my self, and divers others of high Estate. At his Death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry Messengers into all Nations, to hear Tidings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired Wish: Therefore I pray thee (if thou canst) tell me some glad Tidings of her. . Father (quoth *Valentine*) I know somewhat, for the Night before last I both saw her, and spake with her in *Acquitain*; telling him besides, that *Pacolet* the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art, rather than good speed. The Emperor hearing such glad Tidings from his Son, caused great Triumphs throughout the City of Constantinople.

Constantinople. When the Sarazens heard such Shouts and Revelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in a Readiness. The Soldan round begirt *Constantinople*, famishing up all the Inhabitants most lamentable to behold. At last these Tidings came to the Ears of *Valentine*, and the *Green Knight*, who arming themselves, came into the City, and said; Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are in; be yet Couragious and stand to it, and there is hopes of Recovery, wherefore follow my



Counsel, Issue forth some Number of you to Forrage for some Victuals, whilst I, accompanied with 2000 Men, set upon the Sarazens. They

They did as he advised them, and within a short time they behaving themselves so valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all sorts of Victuals. Having thus seized the Victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Soldan fore vexed at his Losses, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from Entrance, but King *Pepin* espying their Policy, and how they had stop'd up the Passage, presently couched his Spear, and ran upon the Soldan so violently, that he bore the proud Pagan to the Earth, then pulling out his Sword at one *Archillon*, a very valiant Commander, with such fury, that he struck him out of his Saddle. *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* perceiving the great Courage, of King *Pepin*, and what fortune he had in the Field, at that present entered freshly into the Battle, and with a resolute Courage, even in the presence of the Soldan, he hewed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrown, *Valentine* addressed him against the Soldan himself, and with his Spear so encountred him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his Horse. *Moraldus*, one of the chief Commanders was slain, and his Admiral taken prisoner by the *Green Knight*, with other Exploits performed on both Parts. But mark what follows, these two Knights were so Triumphant in their uncertain Victory, that they pressed the Enemy so far within Danger, that
when

when they would Return they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Soldan. The Soldan having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his *Mahomet* that they should never escape with Life, but gave present commandment to Raife up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the sight of all his Enemies to Hang them up. Now were *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* in a great Fear, but we will leave them a little, and Return to those Christians that had gotten great booty of Viſtuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountred by the Sarazens Army: In which Encounter the Christians were ſo hard beſet, that they were doubtful what ſhould be the End of that Days bickering. And at laſt, they eſpying what deſperate caſe they ſtood in, with one conſent iſſued forth Men, Women, Priests, Clerks, and all Degrees. When the Pagans ſaw their Multitudes, they were forced to Retire themſelves into their Tents, and by that Means the Christians obtained all their prey of Viſtuals, and ſafely conveyed it into the City, altho' with loſs of many a Life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loſs of his Warlike Men, eſpecially his Son *Valentine*, and the *Green Knight*; moſt heavy and ſad alſo was the worthy King *Pepin*. *Pa-colet* ſeeing theſe two Peers take the Matter ſo heavily, re-comforted them again, ſaying in
this

this Manner: Lords, leave of your Lamentations, for it shall fare better with *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, than you can imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy Words prove true I shall advance thy Estate: Sir, said he, shortly you shall make trial of my Love and Respect towards you: So he betook him to his Wooden Horse, and departed towards the Soldans Host, and came thither just at the Instant that the Soldan came to Judge *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* to death; and how it was prevented you shall hear in the Chapter following.

C H A P. XXXIII.

How Pacolet, by Enchantment, delivered Valentine and the Green Knight out of the Bondage of the Soldan; and how Pacolet Conzened the Soldan when he had him upon his Horse, and instead of carrying him to Portugal, brought him to Constantinople, where he was hanged.

ALL being assembled as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus to speak; Lords, here I present before you, these that most incumber the mighty Giant *Ferragus*, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion; and for that Cause my Judgment is, that he be sent to *Ferragus*, and from him receive punishment

ment fitting his Offence : Nay, said the other Sarazens, let us do so ; but let them both suffer death to Morrow morn. Lords (quoth the Soldan) let it be so. These Resolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entred his Pavillion to Supper, where being set, *Pacolet* came and saluted him in the Name of *Mahomet*. *Pacolet* (quoth the Soldan) thou art welcome ; how fareth *Ferragus* my dear Friend ? Sir (said *Pacolet*) Right well ; and by me sends gladsome Tydings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly (said the Soldan) I prithee begin. Then *Pacolet* drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said : Sir, know this, I am lately come out of *Portugal*, and sent by the fair Wife of *Ferragus*, whose Heart is on fire with the Love she beareth to you ; long hath she concealed these her Affections, but having Power no longer to keep close the Closet of her Breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any other but my self. Again, *Ferragus* is in *Acquitain*, so that no Opportunity should be omitted, therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to Expostulate, for upon my Horse will we suddenly arrive in *Portugal*, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight ; *Pacolet*, thou hast more gladded my Heart than all the Worldly Treasure can afford ; true it is, she is the only Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my Wishes : The Soldan caused *Pacolet* to be highly feasted, so on

Morrow they went towards their Journey, but mark what followed; *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* you must conceive, were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a fight of *Pacolet*, but durst not make any shew thereof; and *Pacolet* on the other side shewed himself a flatterer to the Soldan in Eating, Drinking, and Revelling at the Soldan's Table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Soldan (in the hearing of all)

' Sir, how dare you venture your noble Per-
 ' son so near to this *Green Knight*, and not ra-
 ' ther give him his Desert, for of all Men
 ' living, he is most dangerous: First, for the
 ' Wrongs that he hath committed against his
 ' Brother *Ferragus*, bereaving him of *Cleri-*
 ' *mond*, and giving her in Marriage to a Chri-
 ' stian Knight, next, he hath renounced his
 ' *Mahomet*; these Things considered it is fit
 ' that he should die, were there no more Men
 ' living: Friend (quoth the Soldan) to Mor-
 ' row Morning they shall be both hanged.'

Then the Soldan commanded the Prisoners to be strongly Guarded upon pain of Death, and so withdrawing him to his Chamber, left *Valentine* and the *Green-Knight* under the Conduct of those that most desired their Deaths.

In the dead time of the Night came *Pacolet* unto *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, and first freed them of their Bands, and by Art so charmed all their Warders, (who slept securely) that he brought them past all Danger. Having thus set them at Liberty, about the dawning

dawning of the Day he came to the Soldan's Tent crying out so loud unto him, that he awaken'd him; and then *Pacolet* began thus to say unto him: ' Sir, little appeareth of your Love to the Wife of *Ferragus*, seeing for her sake you are loath to break one Hours sleep. ' Whereunto the Soldan reply'd, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful Dream; and thus it was, ' Methought a Crow did bear me swiftly thro' the Air, and as she was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with his Bill so hard, that the Blood forthwith issued out in abundance; ' now this Dream maketh me much to fear that *Ferragus* hath some Intelligence of my desires, and means to Revenge himself upon me.' Away Sir, quoth *Pacolet*, with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the Love of the Beauteous Lady? By *Mahomet*, quoth the Soldan, thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this Charge: Sirrah, be secret, if my Uncle *Bryan* ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with *Pacolet*, then *Pacolet* took the Soldan behind him upon his Wooden Horse, and turning the Pin, the Horse rose up into the Air so swiftly, that in a little time they were come to *Constantinople*, even in the Emperor's Palace: The Soldan perceiving *Pacolet's* Horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journeys end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in *Portugal*

tugal, in the Palace of King *Ferragus*. Therefore enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will hast into the chamber of the Lady, and presently Cause you to be brought unto her Bed. Do so, quoth the Soldan, for I am even well near ravished with Joy, and shall think each Minute an Hour, till I have my desire.

Now sitteth the Soldan in the Hall, attending the Coming back of *Pacolet*, while he in the mean space, maketh towards the Chamber wherein the Emperor lay; being come to the Door, he gave a great Blow against it, inso-much that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperor's Rest? Friend, quoth *Pacolet*, fear not, for I am *Pacolet*, newly come from the Soldan's Host, where I have set at Liberty both *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who were condemned to die. Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the Soldan himself to be in *Portugal*. Wherefore he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved Death; the Chamberlain told the Emperor all these Tydings, and King *Pepin* also; so arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the Soldan sat: The Soldan perceiving himself betrayed, cried out with a loud Voice: Thou false *Pacolet*, Traitor to my Person, I vow to be revenged upon thee for thy disloyal practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a Mad Man ran up and down the Hall, striking

ing the very Stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to fly from those fenceless Walls: As he was in this mad fit, the Attendants entered towards him with Torches. The Soldan espying them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the 'Squire that attended upon King *Pepin*: This Act of his fired the Courage of the King, that he made a Blow at him, and felled him to the Earth. Being fallen, they bound him Hand and Foot, and in the Morning came *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who finding the Soldan there in Bands, were very joyful.

The Emperor and the King seeing *Valentine*, were joyful for his deliverance, giving great Thanks to *Pacolet* for his care over his Son, and withal said, *Pacolet*, one strain more of thy Horse must I demand; you shall (Sir quoth *Pacolet*) and if you will get behind me, I will instantly Transport you into Hell. But Lords, let that pass, and return unto the Death of the Soldan, for if he escape your Hands at this time, a World of miseries will follow: So that very Hour they proceeded to Judgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in the very sight of the Pagan Host.

This done, the Pagans stood as Men confounded and amazed, to see him there hanging, and wondered how he came within the City, but at last *Bryan* his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor *Pacolet*. After they had lamented the Death

the Soldan, they gathered themselves to counsel, and in his stead chose his Uncle *Bryan Soldan*. After all these things done, *Pacolet* took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into *Acquitain*, to comfort the Lady *Cerimond*, as he promised; but before his departure, *Valentine* came unto him and said: *Pacolet*, at your coming into *Acquitain*, salute from me my Mother *Bellisant*, and my loving Lady *Clerimond*, my Brother *Orson*, and the good Duke of *Acquitain*, with the rest of his Nobles; and above all the rest, deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand all our Proceedings here. Sir, said *Pacolet*, all this I will perform; so taking his Horse, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the Air, as swift as smoak.

The next Morning *Pacolet* was come to his Journey's end, and finding the Duke of *Acquitain*, the Empress *Bellisant*, *Orson*, and *Clerimond* all in safety, he saluted them all, and delivered them Letters, and said: Lady, your Son *Valentine* greeteth you well, shewing you, that the Emperor is right sorrowful about your Banishment, and hath required the Treason of the Traytor, with the Loss of his Life, wherefore he promiseth, that so soon as he can free his Country from the Incurfions of the *Sarazens*, to come himself in Person, and then forth-with bring with him the *Green Knight* whom *Orson* had vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful Tidings suddenly fell into a Swoond, but being somewhat come

P
the
wh
hin
gla
my

come to her self, ſhe ſaid : My Child, I am juſt overcome with Joy, in that I underſtand I am proved innocent of ſuch abominable Crimes, as I was falſly accuſed of : but I long to ſee the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I ſhould not deſire longer to live ; for I am well enough revenged, and my accuſer hath juſtly ſuffered Death moſt ſhamefully for his Treachery.

C H A P. XXXIV.

How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to ſuccour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed Pacolet, and how the King of Indie, cauſed King Trompart's Head to be ſtruck off : And how he would have married with Clerimond ; and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain in the Shape of a Woman : and how Ferragus was ſlain ; and how Orſon, and the Duke went with their Army to Conſtantinople, to ſuccour, the Emperor ; and how Orſon led along with him his Mother ; and how all the Pagans were ſlain before Conſtantinople, and how the Emperor received his Son, and his Wife Bellifant.

PAcolet being arrived in *Aquitain*, at the ſame time that King *Trompart* came thither to aid *Ferragus* againſt the Chriſtians, at whoſe coming, *Ferragus* began thus to ſalute him : Famous King, of your coming I am glad, hoping by your Aſſiſtance to get back my *Siſter Clerimond*, and to be revenged on

all those that have detained her. *Ferragus* (said King *Trompart*) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me *Adrimain* the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound *Pacolet* in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your Love, and if he can but get *Pacolet* into my Hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth *Adrimain*) put your trust in me, and so taking his leave betook him to his magick Art. Being provided of all Things, amongst the rest, he laded himself with Victuals, and took his way towards *Acquitain*; coming thither, he craved entrance of the Gates to sell his Victuals, which was easily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced on *Pacolet*, whom *Pacolet* knew well. *Adrimain* (quoth *Pacolet*) you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your Errand? Then said *Adrimain*, you know that long I served King *Trompart*, yet by Fate I am fallen into a great Mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew forth my Knife and killed him: Now fearing death, I fled from the Court, and came towards you for Succour, and will prove unto you a faithful Servant, so be pleased to accept of me. *Adrimain* (said *Pacolet*) I am content, let it be so, make thee good Cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, *Adrimain* saw the fair *Clerimond* pass through the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was. Then said

said *Pacolet*, it is the Sister of *Ferragus*, who must be married to a right valiant Knight: Whilst they were thus in Conference, came *Orson* unto them, and said, Gentlemen, I could gladly wish that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the assembly.

At whose Words, *Adrimain* drew up a cup above a Pillar, in such wise, that thro' the Palace (seemingly to all the Company) ran a River, furnished with all sorts of Fish, little and great: When the Beholders saw the Water to come up so strongly against them, they were afraid of being drowned: *Pacolet* beholding this feat, amongst the rest, began a Song, and in that Song a Charm, that it seemed to all the Beholders, that a Hart ran thorough that River, over-turning all Things that stood in his way. After this Hart, ran Hunters with their Hounds. This made many of the beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the Hart; but *Pacolet*, by his Art, made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport (quoth *Orson*) was very well performed; and so the Company breaking up, *Pacolet* led *Adrimain* to his Chamber, to be with him, but proved fatal, for towards Midnight *Adrimain* so enchanted all within the Court, and with them *Pacolet*, that he had time to work all that he desired. Afterwards he went towards the Wooden Horse, and getting him, came into the Chamber of *Clerimond*, and by Art caused her to rise, and make her ready, and setting her the Horse behind him, came unto a Win-

dow, turned the Pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King *Trompart*. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, saying: Great King, sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady *Clerimond*, whom I have stolen from *Acquitain*, and with her *Pacolet's* Horse. Now, said the King, I well perceive thy Love; is this the Sister of *Ferragus*? Yea said *Adrimain*, and I have Stolen her away, and also betrayed *Pacolet* my fellow Magician, for he shall never be Master of his Horse again: Ay, but, said the King, art thou acquainted with the Manner of his Horse? O long since, worthy King, and by Virtue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known to King *Trompart*, he thought to make experience of the Horse himself, and taking *Clerimond* behind him, would Transport her into his own Country and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his Arms, for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted Sleep, and set her on the Horse of Wood: All this *Adrimain* was Eye-witness of, and said thus to him, My Lord, if you fail one jot of the true use of the Horse, both your self, and the Lady are in very great Danger: Fear not that, quoth *Trompart*, and so turning the Pin, he mounted swiftly into the Air, and before the next Morning he was two hundred Miles on his Way, but not at his Journies end, for now awaked the Fair Lady *Clerimond* out of her
enchanted

enchanted Sleep, who seeing herself deluded, fell suddenly into a Swoon; this chance struck to the Heart of King *Trompart*, for he was afraid, lest she had been dead, and so turning the Pin, he stopt the Horse in a fair green Field by a Fountain, then taking the Lady from the Horse, he laid her on the Grass, and took a little Water, and cast it on her Face; and the Lady recovering, made such grievous Lamentations, that King *Trompart* was nigh out of his Wits: Within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom King *Trompart* required something to eat, which he gave to the Lady, who did eat thereof, and was refreshed; and at last being come again to her Speech, she weeping, uttered these Words: Unhappy I above all Creatures, for I have lost my Joy by cursed Treason. Alas *Valentine* my Love, cursed be he that hath separated us; *Trompart* hearing her so Clamorous, reproved her soundly, saying: Lady, leave off these foolish Words of the Christian Boy, or else I shall separate thy Head from thy Body? Is it not better for thee to be my Wife, that am sole Lord of this Jurisdiction, than to have a beggarly start-up, that hath neither Land nor living; and with these Words he would have kissed her, but the Lady disdainning him, hit him with her Fist upon the Mouth.

This strange and unlook'd for disdainfulness put King *Trompart* in such an Anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and set her upon

upon the Horse again; and turning the Pin the contrary way, presently, instead of carrying her into his own Country, he lighted in *Indie*, in the midst of a Market-place, kept there that Day: The People seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat: The Lady *Clerimond*, by this time, knew the Horse to be *Pacolet's*, and said: Now am I falsely betrayed and *Pacolet* robbed of his Horse; but my dear *Valentine*, thou most sticketh at my Heart; for now shall I never see thee more. *Trompart*, thought for all this, that he had been in his own Country, still beating down her piteous Complaints with bitter Words: But this fell out ill for King *Trompart*, for the King of *Indie* knew him well: King *Trompart* being come before the King of *Indie*, he bid him welcome, for you are he that put my Brother to death; wherefore I will be revenged on thee; and so caused his Head to be smitten off: After the Lady was led into the Kings Palace, where he sat in his own Person, and thus he said: Lady I know now of whence you are, by the bright splendor of your Face, it hath enthralled my Heart; wherefore if you please to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this spacious continent. Sir, quoth she, you speak graciously; but to take any Man to Husband, I have made a solemn Vow to refrain the space of one whole Year; wherefore if it please you let my Vow be accomplished, and that time being run out, then will I willingly consent thereto: Well, said

said the King, thy Answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said; perform thy Vow, and remain within my Palace; and he commanded that her Attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber of state; into which Chamber she caused to be brought the Wooden Horse that carried her thither; and being there, she placed it in the secretest place she could devise, and still desired she might be freed out of that Danger. Now we leave her a while, and return to *Pacolet*, and look back also to *Acquittain*, and see the Mourning that is made for the Lady *Clerimond*.

The Night after *Adrimain* had betrayed *Pacolet*, great Lamentations were made for the Fair *Clerimond*, throughout the City of *Acquittain*. Moreover, when *Pacolet* found *Adrimain* absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it: All this so Falling out, *Pacolet* fell into a most grievous Passion, insomuch, as had not *Orson*, at that Instant come in, he would have killed himself.

Pacolet being thus rescued by *Orson*, and beholding the general Sorrow for the Beauteous Lady *Clerimond*, he began thus to comfort them; Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traitor *Adrimain*, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparreled himself like a gallant Maid, and took his way to the Host of *Ferragus*

ragus. Being come among the Army, many, *Pagans* prayed for her Love, but evermore *Pacolet* excused himself, and said: Pardon me, I pray you, for I am promised already to the Enchanter *Adrimain*, and so they let her pass on. At last *Pacolet* came to the Tent where *Adrimain* was; at which *Adrimain* stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in Love, that that Night he detained him in his Chamber; but *Pacolet* no Wit to seek of his Shifts, made somewhat squeamish, and said: My Lord, know this, I have been desired of many, but I think you the worthiest to be first served: Daughter (quoth *Adrimain*) fear nothing, be of good Cheer, and be Merry, for I have a great desire to thee, and will use thee well: Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be served with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the Tent of *Ferragus*, he demanded of the Servant of *Adrimain*, what was become of King *Trompart*, the Servant, said, I think he is returned again into his own Country, and carried along with him the Lady *Clerimond*, upon a Horse of Wood, that my Master had given him. *Pacolet* hearing of this, was vexed at the Heart: By this time was *Adrimain* come unto his Tent, saying to *Pacolet*, Daughter, is it time to go to Rest? See here is the Bed we mean to sport in; your Will be done said *Pacolet*: Then *Adrimain* put off his Cloaths, and went into the Bed: *Pacolet* enchanted him
into

into so strong a Sleep, that he could not awake till Morning: As he dealt with *Adrimain*, so he did with all round about him; and putting off his Woman's attire, he clad himself in all the Richest Cloaths that *Adrimain* had; and after, with his own Sword, cut off his Head, and bare it away with him: Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of *Ferragus*, which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy Sleep. This done, he entered the Tent of *Ferragus*, where he suddenly made him leap out of his Bed, and cloath him; and tying him to his Girdle, made him run by his side like a Spannel, till he came to the very entrance of the Gates of *Acquittain*.

When *Pacolet* was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons; and espying *Pacolet*, they said unto him, Where is *Clerimond*, that thou bringest her not again? he answered, Lords be patient a while, I cannot shew you all at once; know this, I am fully revenged on *Adrimain*, for here I have brought his Head, and here is *Ferragus*, who by my Art I have also surprized, as you may see, then said *Orson*, you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet have I to say; which is, I have enchanted asleep the whole Host of *Ferragus*, therefore if ever you mean to have resistless Victory, go now. What say you, my Lords? (quoth *Orson*) methinks *Pacolet* hath

hath well advised us, therefore let us go on: So they slaughtered all that lay before them, and put *Ferragus* into a most filthy, and loathsome Prison, until their Return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into *Acquitain*, and there commanded to have the Giant *Ferragus* brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted Sleep, unto whom the Duke, said thus: *Ferragus*, if thou wilt here forsake thy *Mahomet*, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live, which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely die. Know, said *Ferragus*, I had rather suffer a thousand Deaths: So he was suddenly beheaded. After his death, *Orson* took leave of the Duke, and went towards *Constantinople*, to aid his Father the *Grecian* Emperor, and his Uncle King *Pepin* of *France*, against the unbelieving *Sarazens*, that had strongly besieged the City, but a little before his departure, the Duke said thus unto him: Worthy Knight since you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you Company; *Orson* was very joyful to hear him so say, and gave him thanks; so taking some small time to set Things in a Readiness, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant Knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the Way, the Empress *Bellissant* much lamented the hard usage of her Lord: But *Orson* pitying her, said: Mother, leave off your Tears, and only joy in that you have been falsely accused, which

now

now will much encrease your Honour: But I fear most our entrance into the City, which, as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay, said *Pacolet*, fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and my self will go before, and tell them so: Do so, said *Orson*, and tell *Valentine* the hard Fortunes of *Cerimond*. Nay, quoth *Pacolet*, not I, I will be no bearer of such sad Tidings. Now King *Pepin* and the Emperor being strong besieged, were in great distress for Victuals, within the City, and there was no way to be relieved but by the Sword. Then *Valentine* accompanied with the *Green Knight*, and a worthy band of Soldiers, issued out of *Constantinople*, and seized upon two hundred Chariots of Victuals of the *Pagans*, and recovered the same, with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards *Constantinople*, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt round about; on the one side with the Soldan, and on the other with the King of *Arabia*, and thirdly with a King called *Afficion*. Amongst these Champions fell out a terrible bloody Conflict, but *Valentine* in single fight killed the King of *Dramagen*, and the King of *Clarion*. The *Green Knight* also behaved himself gallantly, for at one Blow he struck off the shield of the King of *Morien*, and before that slew his Brother: But all this Valour little availed; for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Soldan:

dan: who having them in his possession, assembled fifteen Pagan Knights to adjudge them to death. *Valentine* being thus in Bands, greatly lamented the state of the Lady *Clerimond*, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest; saying, I must now forsake you all and never again behold your Faces. The *Green Knight* seeing him so passionate, said, let us die in a good Cause, and welcome Death.

Now was the Soldan set in his Chair of State, to proceed to Judgment; in the mean space comes *Pacolet*, in the midst of the throng, not known of any, and came and stood before the Judgment Seat, and kneeling down, said, right dear Sir, know I am a Messenger from your Brother *Godart*, the great King of *Argier*, who to your Succour, hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, and by me requireth on which side your Army shall be ranked. Again, he prays you, if you have any Christian Prisoners, to send them him, and he will send them into his own Country, to draw the Plow; and here stands a Couple of fit Instruments for that Purpose. The Soldan rejoiced at these Tidings, and commanded he should be highly feasted for that Night: Mean time *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* were glad of *Pacolet's* Company. In the dead time of the Night, *Pacolet* went unto them, and unbound them, and giving to each of them a Horse, bid them follow him. Being out of the Enemies reach, *Pacolet* said thus to them: Lords
be

be comforted, for in this Land is assembled the Duke of *Acquitain* and the Knight *Orson*, the noble Empress, and the Lady *Fezon*: Ay, but said *Valentine*, why cometh not the fair *Clerimond*? Then answered *Pacolet*, she would have come, but being Sea-sick, was forced to return again into *Acquitain*: So *Valentine* questioned no farther with him. Then *Pacolet* advised them all to go into the City of *Constantinople*, and on the Morrow issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy, in the mean time I will on the other side bestir my self, that the Host of the warlike Duke shall come up, and give a fresh Assault. Now the Soldan seeing this, shall imagine it to be his Brother, the King of *Argier*. *Pacolet* (said *Valentine*) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected: Thus they departed, *Pacolet* took his way to the Duke of *Acquitain*, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that he had been with the Host of the Soldan, and how he had freed *Valentine*, and the *Green Knight*. Then *Orson* answered *Pacolet*, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is, that to morrow Morning, we assail the host of the Sarazens on the one side, and they of *Constantinople* on the other, and so by that Means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his Men in Order, and so kept themselves that Night.

The

The next Morning the Emperor and King *Pepin*, diligently brought forth their Men to fight, and divided their Host into five Battles, the first was delivered to *Valentine*, the second to the *Green Knight*, the third to King *Pepin*, the fourth *Myllan Daugler*, and the fifth to *Sampson of Orleans*, one that bare in his Banner a Bar of Silver. At break of Day these Powers issued out of the City, to give an assault upon the Enemy: Being come into the Field, they sounded their Instruments, the Noise thereof so affrighted the Sarazens, that



they ran out of their Tents, crying, an Alarum, an Alarum. This Battle was extream hot for the Christians that Day, yet the Enemy had

had no Cause to boast. King *Pepin* behaved himself so valiantly, and cried out to his Soldiers; *St. Denis, St. Denis*, then a Sarazen cried out to the Soldan to retire, for the safeguard of their Lives, for this Night have we lost our two Prisoners, and also there is coming against us a new supply of a great Army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forward, and roused up their Courage doubly, insomuch that they enforced the Christians to fall back, but little availed their Pride; for there came upon them the Duke of *Acquitain*, with his Forces, and assailed them so fiercely, that they put to the Sword, all that did come before them, and thus the Christians conquered. When the Battle was ended the Christians had recovered their scatter'd Forces, *Valentine* and *Orson* came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutiful Reverence. Father (quoth *Valentine*) here you may behold my Brother *Orson*, whom as yet you never knew; then the Emperor embraced him with Tears, and so did the worthy King *Pepin*, *Valentine*, *Orson*, the *Green Knight*, *Blandiman*, and *Guidard* the Merchant, he that vaquished the false Arch-Priest, all these, with great Triumph, set out to visit the Tent of the Noble Empress *Bellisant*, and the Lady *Fezion*.

By this time they are come: When the Emperor saw his Wife *Bellisant*, he leapt off his Horse, and in Tears and Sighs not being able to speak, he embraced her: And *Valentine* and
Orson

Orson baring them Company in their Lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last Words took place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard Dealing that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring Pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all Wrongs; but I long to see the Man that proved my Innocency with his Sword, Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your Honour was preserved. Sir (quoth the Lady) you ought to be regarded for your service to the Empire of *Greece*, and the King of *France*: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you Yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during Life. Then said *Valentine*, Mother, I pray tell me some Tidings of *Clerimond*. Fair Son, *Clerimond* had been stolen from *Acquitain*, and giving to King *Trompart*, that came to the Pagans aid. *Va'entine* hearing this, look'd strangely upon *Pacolet*, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but *Pacolet* entreated him to be Patient, for an Enchanter hath stolen my Horse away; but I am Revenged on him, by cutting off his Head.. *Valentine* understanding these Misfortunes, and that every one was Innocent, fell into bitter Passions for his loss.

C H A P. XXXV.

How King Pepin took leave of the Emperor and returned into France, and how Orson went along with him. How Garnier fainting, left the Knife in the Bed. And how Orson claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him; and it was (by the twelve Peers of France) granted. And how Valentine, in seeking Clerimond, arrived at Antioch, and Faught with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon. And how Valentine after the Conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of Antioch, and all his Land to be baptized and of the Lawless Love of the Queen Rosamond. And how the King of Antioch was put to Death for Renouncing his Mahometry, by King Brandiffer, his Wifes Father. And how the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by Brandiffer.

THESE Wars thus ended, King Pepin took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into France. Orson would needs go along with his Uncle Pepin, and spend the Remainder of his Days in his Service. The King was content, and said unto him, I will make you High Constable of France, moreover, if it so chance that my Young Son Charles should die before me, I will make you King

King of *France*. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful ; and along with me will I bear the Lady *Fezon* : The Day of taking leave came, and they embraced each other with Kisses and Tears : But *Valentine* could not Rest, for he had lost his Love, wherefore I am resolved to seek my Love, for whom I endangered my Life, and by my Sword I won her : Her I bewail, and her will I Recover again, if she be alive : But if I find her not, short and woeful will be my Days. And so he called *Pacolet* to him, and said, wilt thou serve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Task ? Sir, quoth he, willingly ; and am ready whensoever you shall set forward. Then *Valentine* made all Things in a Readiness for his departure ; and now hath taken Sea, and left his Country, only Accompanied with three Attendance. Now we leave him, and speak of King *Pepin*, who by this time is seated at *Paris*, and was honourably received : But above all, the valiant *Orson* was highly esteemed, insomuch, that he had all the Command of the Kingdom delivered unto him : If any thing was brought before the King, *Orson* was the Man to be sued unto.

This Greatness of *Orson* fretted *Haufray* and *Henry* (of whom you have heard before) to the Heart, insomuch that they plotted Means how to take away his Life, saying, it was much to their Indignity, that *Orson* should be thus preferred before them, being Sons
unto

unto the King : Surely, says one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own Pride will be his Overthrow. Ay, but (said *Haufray*) understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our elder Sister, to wit, *Florence* and *Garnier*, they are both hardy and fierce, and by them methinks some Plot might be set on foot again ; they are fit Members to execute any Villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his privy Chamber : Now either of these might enter into the King's Chamber, and murder him in his Bed, and such a Deed done, it will surely be laid to *Orson's* Charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Person. If this can be effected, *Orson* will surely be condemned to Death, and the Realm wholly light into our Hands.

Upon this Resolution, they sent for their two Kinsmen, to acquaint them with the Treason, and being come, *Haufray* said unto them, Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a Plot to do us good, and raise you to Honour ; which thing we chose rather to offer unto you, by Reason you are allied to us, and therefore respect you before all other. Thus it is, you know the King our Father never loved us, but hath ever advanced Strangers, and left us slightly regarded : These things considered, my Brother, I, and you two Brothers, descended from our Uncle, determines to put our doting Father to Death, and so we may share the Land into our own Government.

L

This

This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, and I think you, *Garnier*, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the King's Chamber, you may convey yourself behind some Arras, and when the King is in Bed murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fact will be laid on *Orson*, for he only hath the Charge of his Body, and so we shall quickly get him put to Death; and as for little *Charles*, we shall find Means to make him away. Uncle (said *Garnier*) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, *Garnier* on a Night when the King was at Supper, got a Knife, and secretly entred into the King's Chamber, and hid himself behind the Hangings. When the Hour of the King's going to Bed came, he was attended by his Guard, and Chamberlain, as the Manner was. The King being laid, every Man departed, save only *Orson*, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: *Orson* seeing the King asleep, laid himself down upon a Pallet by him.

The dead time of the Night being come, wherein *Garnier* assayed (having the Knife ready) the bloody Enterprize; but coming to the Bed-side, ready to strike the fatal Stroke, he thought the King would awake; and trembling with Fear, laid him down by the Bed-side, and durst not stir: In a short Time he ventured again, but being (as before) possessed with Fear, he put the Knife
within

within the Bed, and then returned to the Place from whence he came. *Orson* all this while slept soundly, doubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful Dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of her Honour : Also he thought, that beside a River, he saw two Herons fight with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended herself so valiantly, that he had slain the two Herons, had they not been assisted by a Multitude of little Birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream *Orson* awaked, and was much astonished thereat, saying, The Gods preserve my Brother *Valentine* from Treasons. When the Day broke, *Orson* went softly out of the Chamber, least he should awaken the King. When *Garnier* saw *Orson* gone, he also followed soon after, and took his Way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to hear the News. *Garnier*, quoth they) tell us what is done ; Lords (said *Garnier*) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in *France*, and yet I have not hurt the King, for each time that I lifted up my Hand to strike, Fear and Horror did so affright me, that I had not Courage to do the Deed : But I then thought of another Expedient, which is this ; I have left the Knife in the King's Bed, which when he finds he will be much amazed ; then we will accuse *Orson* of Treason, and tell the King, there are four Traitors, whereof *Orson* is the principle ;

ciple: Also, they will make away little *Charles*, and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, *Orson* hath conveyed a Knife into the King's Bed; if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the Door, heard all their Conference. *Garnier* (said *Haufray*) you say well; but if *Orson* deny it, you and your Brother shall offer Combat against him, and if I see you are like to be worsted, I and my Brother will find Men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the second time for the innocent *Orson*. The next Day the King being at Dinner, attended by *Haufray* and *Henry*, who shewed great Civility to *Orson*. When *Garnier* saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Worthy King, your Grace hath bestowed upon me many great Favours; wherefore it is my Duty to open unto you a Treason which lately I chanced to hear; and to the End that you may have a Care of your Person, I will relate the Practices thereof.

Garnier then desired they would lay Hands on *Orson* first, for he was the principal Traitor; the Number in all are four; *Orson* was the Man should kill you in your Bed with a Knife; and that your Majesty may the better credit me, this Day, as they met together, I was in a certain Place, and heard *Orson* say, the Knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your Bed; now if it please you to go or send, you shall find my Words

Words true. Sir, (said *Florent*) my Brother speaketh nothing but Truth.

The King hearing these Words, beheld *Orson* with many strange Countenances, and at last said: False and disloyal Man, can such a thing enter into thy Breast, as to take away my Life, whom I have more respected than my own Children! Liege, quoth *Orson*, be not so lightly carried away to believe this Accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall envy the Author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the Knife be found in the Bed, I will have no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded, as at this present. Sir (said *Myllon Daugler*) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that *Orson* is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty: Yea, but (said the King) if we find a Knife in the Bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go and make Trial. So the King went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Witnesses, where they found the Knife, as *Garnier* said: Alas! (said the King) in whom may I trust, when my own Kinsman seeketh my Life, but I vow he shall suffer a shameful Death. With that a valiant Knight named *Simon* came to *Orson*, which loved him well, and said: Alas! Sir, flee and save your Life for the King has found the Knife in his Bed; and so the King hath vowed your Death, *Orson* said, I fear nothing. The King entred

the Hall where *Orson* was guarded with fifty one Knights, and so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment. *Orson* being brought before the King and his Lords, he said unto them: Worthy Lords, since my Words cannot defend me, I require but the Custom of your Country; which is, that when a Man shall be accused of Murther or Treason, he might crave a Combat against his Enemy. Now I hold my self Innocent, which I will maintain, if by your Counsels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: And further to clear my self, Lo here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my Body as it pleaseth you. *Garnier* said to *Orson*, I think you had better hold your peace, for the Thing being already proved, we have no Reason to Answer you in the Field. Ah Traytor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a Man that feareth not Damnation, and desireth Honour, saith so. Upon these Words the twelve Peers of *France* caused *Orson* to be removed out of the place, and also the Brothers his Adversaries, while in the mean time the rest disputed the Question. At last it was adjudged, that *Orson's* demand was reasonable, and that he ought to be heard: Then were the Brothers called in again before the King; and Duke *Myllon* demanded of *Garnier*, who were Confederates with him in the Kings death: Lords (quoth he) I will not betray them for all the Wealth in *France*: *Garnier* (quoth he) I give sentance, that you and your Brother take up *Orson's* Gage

Gage, and fight with him; for since you conceal the rest of these Murtherers, it is to be doubted, that there is Malice in the Plot. Orson at this sentance rejoyced, and cast his Glove down to these two Traytors, saying; Lords, here is my Glove, that I cast down, upon this Condition, that if my case be foul, or by them be conquered, I offer my Body to your will and pleasure: Rise then, said the King, for Judgment is past; and for your farther security, it were good we had some Hostage: With that *Haufray* and *Henry* offered themselves Body for Body, for *Garnier* and his Brother: And for *Orson* stood *Myllon Daugler*, and *Duke Sampson*. So a Month was assigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they should fight, *Duke Myllon*, *Daugler*, *Sampson*, *Galeram*, and *Garvaies*, brought forth *Orson*; for he was well beloved: when he was armed, and well mounted, he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long he had not been there, but *Haufray* and *Henry* entred the Field with *Garnier* and *Florent*, the two Traytors, who greatly feared *Orson*, but *Haufray* and *Henry* still comforted them, promising them Aid: Being thus in a Readiness, the Bishop of *Paris* went unto them, and gave all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, then the Bishop departed. After came the Heralds, and Serjeants of the Field, to clear the place: Now *Haufray* had provided three thousand Men hard by, and

gave them command, that as soon as they heard him blow his Horn, they should set forwards towards him. This gladded the Traitors at the Heart, but it little availed them, for as soon as the Trumpets signal gave, *Orson* couched his Spear, and putting his Spurs to his Horse, ran upon them with fury, and lent *Garnier* such a stroke, that he ran through both Shield and Armour: *Florent* on the other side, gave *Orson* a Blow, that he thought he had struck a gainst a Tower: False and accursed Traitor (quoth *Orson*) thou hast wrongfully accused me; e'er this Day pass, I shall shew thee where Loyalty doth rest; and with these Words, he with his Sword smote *Garnier* out of his Saddle, and withal pull'd off his Helm, and had cut off his Head, if his Brother *Florent* had not rescued him.

Again *Orson* made towards *Garnier*, and striking off his Ear, said: Fair Master, I would be loath you should lose by the bargain. Then began a fresh Combat between these three Champions, *Garnier* having recovered again his Helm, came upon *Orson* with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus *Orson* had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout Courage, and besides, they relied much upon the Rescue of *Haufray* and *Henry*, but still *Orson* followed, and at last so wounded *Garnier*, that he was fain to forsake his Horse. Being on the Ground, he smote at
Orson's

Orson's Horse, insomuch that he cut off one of his Legs, and felled him to the Earth, but Orson being light and strong leapt from off his Back, and took *Garnier* between his Arms so strongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the Earth, but as he would have wounded him in the Belly, *Florent* came upon Orson, and gave him such a stroke on the Helm, that he made him stagger; Orson vexed hereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his Horse dead to the Earth, and after took off his Helm. Brother (said *Florent*) flie not, return, or we shall be vanquished, and herewithal they made a fresh Encounter upon Orson, and with their Swords laid on so lustily; that the Stroaks entred the Armour, and drew Blood, Orson feeling himself wounded, smote off one of *Florent's* Arms; but yet he gave not over. Orson espying him making a Blow at him, made as if he would have struck at *Garnier*, but suddenly withdrawing his Arm, hit *Florent* in such wise, that he fell down dead to the Earth, and after said unto *Garnier*, Traitor, thou shalt follow after except thou confess the Treason. Not so, Orson, for I shall be revenged on thee for my Brothers Death: *Haufray* and *Henry* disliked the Match, and said, one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confess the Treason, and thereby bring us in Danger. Brother (said *Haufray*) I will tell you what may be done, as soon as we perceive *Garnier* to be overcome, before he confess any

L 5

thing

thing, we will enter the Field, and so the Treason shall not be known, Quoth *Henry*, let it be so. Now are both the Champions at it in the Field. *Garnier* (quoth *Orson*) you see you cannot escape my Hands, therefore confess the Treason, and I will save your Life. Boy (quoth *Garnier*) thy fair Promises are little worth, for seeing I have lost an Ear, I little respect any place of Honour; so rather chuse to die valiantly, or Conquer thee I set down my rest, that here I will finish my Fortunes, either to Conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth *Orson*) and since death is so welcome to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest Day of thy Life: And thus he makes at *Garnier*, and by strength of Arms threw him under him, and pulled off his Helm. *Haufray* seeing there was no way but one, cryed out, *Orson* slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do such Justice upon him, as so foul an Act appertaineth: and *Haufray* said unto *Garnier*, Nephew, confess the Fact, and we will be a Means unto the King for your Pardon. Lord, said *Garnier*, I did put the Knife into the King's Bed, in speaking these Words, *Haufray* drew out his Sword and run him thorow; and afterwards said, Lords, let this Traytor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved: But Cousin *Orson* I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you Innocent: And though *Garnier* were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my Blood. News
coming

coming to the Lady *Fezon*, she was glad of *Orson's* Victory; King *Pepin* also came, saying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous Wounds. Uncle, quoth *Orson*, the Traytors are vanquished, and *Haufray* made *Garnier* confess the Treason, and so killed him. Nephew, be ware of that *Haufray*, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and Barons returned into the City of *Paris*, and made great joy for the Victory: *Haufray* and *Henry* speak well of him, but in their Hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and had their desert, where we leave them, and return to *Valentine* who rode about in Search of out *Clerimond*. *Valentine*, having travelled long, at last arrived at the City of *Antioch*, thinking to find *Clerimond*. *Pacolet* being with him, could speak their Language, and took up their lodging in a great Man's House, but the Host of the House was somewhat doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken, insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of *Antioch*, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my House, that have entered your Land without paying Tribute. The King said, thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto *Valentine*: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choice of, or else suffer Death. What is it (quoth *Valentine*) for I will do

do any thing to save my Life. The King laid, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many Men: She is bigger then a Horse, winged like a Fowl, feathered like a Griffin, the head like a Serpent, a great Sting within her Mouth, a fierce look, the Skin covered with red Scales, and she hath the Feet of a Lyon. (Quoth *Valentine*) this is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I Conquer this Dragon, you will then change your *Mahometry*, and become a Christian: The King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any returned alive that attempted it. Then *Valentine* caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great Number of long Spikes of Steel, a Foot long, as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, *Valentine* put on Armour, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his Man, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon, either the Carcass of a Man or a Beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: But having eaten her prey, she returned to her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful

ful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Sea-side for to take up Christians, and they were brought to be devoured by the Dragon.

Now by this time is *Valentine* within the sight of the Dragon, she seeing one come towards her, closed her Wings most fiercely, casting out of her Mouth Fire. Then he



descended from his Horse, and left his sharp Ax at his Saddle Bow, and went towards the Serpent, thinking to have smitten her, but she lifted up her Paw to smite *Valentine*, who subtilty watching his Opportunity, lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with Spikes) and so the Serpent broached her Foot upon them, who feeling her self hurt, she cried out most horribly, drawing back, *Valentine* pursued, but when the Serpent see him approach

approach, she rose upon her Feet, but fearing the Shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said, see yonder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his Hardiness. Also, the fair Queen *Rozamond* fell in Love with *Valentine*, to see him so adventurous. Now grew the Battle fierce and dangerous between *Valentine* and the Dragon, but still she fearing the Pricks of the Shield, by which he held her in play, in the one he bare his Shield, and in the other his Sword, wherewith he gave the Serpent a marvellous Blow under the Ear, but with the Blow he broke his Sword. *Valentine* was in great Danger when his Sword was broken, for the Beast grew so angry, that with her Paw she wrent his Armour quite through. *Va'entine* still pursuing her, and drew forth a Knife, and struck it in her Throat, but she little regarded it: *Va'entine* seeing all this did signify nothing, ran and fetched the Ax at his Saddle bow, and returning unto her, subtilty waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a Blow with his Ax: that he cut off most part of her Tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she flew at *Valentine's* Head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the Ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his Head being uncovered: *Pacolet* perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in Arms, got another Helm, and bare it to his Master; *Valentine* perceiving him, said: Friend, I am very

very nigh spent, go thy ways and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here thou must die with me. But for all this, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine*, and delivered the Helm; the Serpent seeing that, came to *Pacolet* and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a push with her Paw, that he felt it through his Armour, and had slain him, had not *Valentine* with his Ax cut of her Nose and put out one her Eyes; these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Wing, she flew to the Top of a high Rock: Then went *Valentine* to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his Head with his Shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the Rock. Then *Pacolet* put on *Valentine's* Helm, and said: Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my health faileth: As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed *Valentine*, and flying directly at his Head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but *Valentine*, threw his Ax so right, that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not fly. The Dragon being down, *Valentine* quickly smote off the other Wing; so that the Battle was most violent between them, insomuch that he was not able to lift up his Arm any longer to wield his Ax; but leaving all, he got up into a Tree, to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a
cruel

cruel Countenance, casting out of her Mouth nothing but stinking Vapours. *Valentine* being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran so fiercely at him: *Valentine* still put the Shield before him, and with his Ax cut her left Thigh, wherewithal she fell to the Earth. *Valentine* still pursues his Stroaks, and ran his Ax so far in her throat, that she fell down dead. *Valentine* having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; of all Knights thou art the most hardy, for by thy Valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us. With these Words they entred the City, and so the Palace, where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King caused *Valentine's* Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamoured on him so hotly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the Death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his Wounds within the City of *Antioch*, he said unto the King: Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your People would receive Baptism, if I overcame the Dragon; you see she is slain by me only. True (quoth the King) and look what I promised, I will perform: And thereupon sent his present Edict throughout the Land, that every one should forsake his *Mahomet*, and be Baptized. The Queen sent for *Valentine* to her Chamber

Chamber, who presently went to her, and said, Lady, I am come at your Command, and ready to do you service. Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great Hardiness, Wildom, Strength, and all Valour belonging to a famous Warrior, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy Love: O that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under subjection: O I could Love thee beyond human Reason, had'st thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me Love. Lady I thank you, but you have wedded a puissant King, and him only ought you to Love and Honour. Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated. *Valentine* seeing the Queen so eager, replied, Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest your self content till I return from my intended Journey, to the holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many Women that are weary of their Husbands, for the Love of others; even so began this Queen to practise; for one Night, as the Queen was going to Bed, a Cup of Wine was brought unto her, as the custom was, wherein she had conveyed Poison, and after presented it unto the King: But he having some jealousy thereof, disliked it, saying, Lady, look what drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady
being

being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her Knees, craved Pardon, and said that *Valentine* procured her to do it. I do believe thee, quoth the King, and Pardon thee; so they lay together that Night, but she still requested, that *Valentine* might be put to Death: He shall as sure as I live, quoth the King. She hearing the King say so, was sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of her Maidens, sent to *Valentine*, to tell her Will, and what the King had decreed against him: *Valentine* hearing of this Accusation, whereof he was Innocent, Said, what will not a Woman undertake? Now for the Love of the Queen must I depart like a Traitor, or else lay her shame open to the World; well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my self than her. And therewithal calling upon his Attendants, before the Morning, he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where lay a Ship full of Passengers ready to put off, in amongst the rest goes he and his Company; so hoisting Sails they departed. On the Morrow when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them, Lords, I am most deceived in the Man whom I most trusted, and he whom in Heart I held dearest hath betrayed me, *Valentine* I mean, who for to gain the lawless Love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to Poison me; therefore let us proceed to judge him to some shameful Death.

Amongst

Amongst the rest an aged wise Baron said, we have no Reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to Answer. Again, were he never so great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon *Valentine* was sent for, but instead of *Valentine* came his Host, who told them *Valentine* was gone before break of the Day from his House, but whither he knew not. The King hearing this sent forth Men to follow and pursue him; but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea. Shortly after that the King of *Antioch* was converted, his Wife's Father *Brandiffer*, a Turk, had so great a spleen against the King for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his Daughter *Rozamond*. When the King heard this unjust demand, he gain said him; hereupon *Brandiffer* came upon him with a hundred thousand Pagans, and besieged his City. At last, within the Compass of four Months, by Treason he obtain'd it, took the King Prisoner, and suddenly put him to Death, and Crowned himself King of *Antioch*. This done he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the Land of *Greece*, into a little City called *Cretophe*.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of *Greece* newly arrived then, he and the *Green Knight*, with some other Company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the Hands of *Brandiffers* Souldiers, and having gotten them, hasted

hasted towards the Gates of the City, thinking to have siezed the whole City, but they found it manfully defended. The Men of *Cretophe* were very sorrowful for the Loss of the Emperor and the *Green Knight*. At last they determined to send Letters unto *Bellisant* of what had happened, and to demand aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wonderous sad, and sending for their Captains, and Men of War, made Preparation for a speedy Revenge. Also she sent for her Son *Orson*, and craved aid of her Brother King *Pepin*: But *Brandiffer* had Scouts abroad to give him notice of all that happened, and fearing the force of the *Greeks*, and their Prisoners loss, they stole to the Seaside; so taking Shipping, they in a short time arrived in *Lize*, in which place they took a Castle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, *Rozamond* and *Ga'azy*, who for their Beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings: *Brandiffer* had no meaning to Marry either, wherefore he caused them to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a time; at the end of this Bridge was two fierce Lions stood to keep the entry into this Castle: The Lady *Galazy* was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the *Green Knight* with other Christians, which had been there a long time, were put. Where leave we them,
and

and we shall shew you somewhat of the Lady *Clerimond*, which still remained in *Indie*.

C H A P. XXXVI.

How Clerimond after the Year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of Indie. And of Lucar that would revenge the death of his Father King Trompart, upon the King of Indie. How King Lucar in the City of Esclariana wedded Rozamond, the fair Daughter of Brandiffer. How Valentine departed from Esclardy, to breath out Defiance: Of the Answer he brought from the Indian King. How Rozamond found a way to be taken, and led unto the Indian King. How King Lucar caused Brandiffer to stay with him, and sent Valentine into Angory against King Pepin: How King Pepin took the City of Angory.

YOU have heard already of the Death of King *Trompart*, who stole away the Lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolet's* Horse: Also how she got Pardon for one whole Year before she would Marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no succour to her relief, which she had so long expected, therefore (poor Lady) now is she put to her Shifts, and to save her Maiden-Head, she feigned her self very sick. This News coming to the King's Ear, that the fair *Clerimond* was extrem sick, at which he grew very sad, and
came

came to visit her, at last he would have put his Hand about her Head, to have held it, but she refusing, took his Arm away, and lift up her Head her self, making Signs that she would bite him, at which Action he wondred, and grew much astonished thereat. After this she rowled her Eyes up and down, and made grievous Faces in such wise, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing least she should prove mad. In this Manner she abode a long time, and she did act the Matter so well, that within fifteen Days she seemed more like a Beast than a Woman: she made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them she would leave some mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her meat at the Window, for none would come near her. One while she put her Smock uppermost, anon she bedawbed her Face with Soot, and in this State the King came and beheld her, lamenting her Distemper, and said unto her; Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made Signs as if she would beat him, but then she fell into a strange fit of Madness: One while she would run against the Chimney, another while fall into a great Laughter, then sit down and make Faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many ways was tried for her Recovery, yet none prevailed: So leave we her in her Chamber, and return to *Valentine*, who with

an ardent desire is roved abroad, accompanied with *Pacolet*, to find out the Lady *Cerimond*, and now were they arrived in *Esclardy*, which was the Kingdom of *Trompart*, who carried away the Lady on *Pacolet's* Horse. Being in the City they asked for King *Trompart*, so they told him he was slain by the King of *Indie*, and that now at this present, *Lucar* his Son would revenge his death upon the King of *Indie*, and to that end he hath newly mustered up his Powers, and waged many Royal Kings to undertake this War. Then spake *Pacolet*, who well understood the Language, saying, of what Account is this King *Lucar*? For the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the Daughter of *Brandiffer*, that was late Wife to the King of *Antioch*, who was slain by *Brandiffer*, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale *Valentine* was much astonished, and wondred at this sudden Alteration, but at last he said; what is become of the Lady that King *Trompart* did bring with him? Of her we hear no Tidings, (quoth the Host) Tell me then where is King *Lucar* at this present, I would fain serve under him for Wages, for my Money is fallen short, and I have a great desire to follow the Wars. Marry, said the Host, King *Lucar* is in *Esclardy*, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Host, attending *Brandiffer* to receive his Daughter in Wedlock. *Valentine* knowing all this, he hoped to hear of *Clerimond*

mond, and so he departed, and came to *Esclardy* to serve King *Lucar*.

Lucar being in the City of *Esclardy*, thither came *Brandiffer* with his Daughter, at sight of whom King *Lucar* was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King *Lucar*. *Valentine* was abroad, and entering a Wood, he heard the crying Voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: *Valentine* still heard the Cry, but said *Pacolet*, meddle not in this Matter, for you know not what Danger you may be drawn into. *Pacolet*, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the Name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of Necessity: So he rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted on a Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then *Valentine* said: My Friend, forsake your Lady, and betake to your Arms to Combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By *Mahomet* (quoth the Pagan) I accept thy Challenge, and will make thee know, that in an evil Hour thou camest hither. These Words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then he took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that *Valentine* ran his Spear quite through the Body of the Pagan, insomuch that he fell down dead. Then went *Valentine* to the Maiden, saying: Damsel, now is your Enemy laid in the Dust, but I pray shew me Cause

Cause why this Man brought you into this Wood: Sir, I will tell nothing, save the Truth; last Night he came to my Father's House to lodge, and there attempting the use of my Body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father and slew him. Afterwards he thought he should surely have got his Will on me in this Manner as you see, from which by your Manhood I am freed, and mine Honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your Body hath Ransomed mine; and besides, as you have won me, I yield my self to your pleasure. Damsel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your House, and keep well your Chastity. So *Valentine* left the Maiden, and took his way towards *Esclardy*.

This slain Pagan had certain Attendants, which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told this Misfortune to the King, saying: Our Master (and your Marshal) is slain in the Wood. The King was hereat right heavy, and presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the Murtherer, At last *Valentine* and his Company was taken, bound, and beaten by the King's command. Now in this Castle was *Rozamond*, who knew *Valentine*, and was very sorrowful for him, and she went unto the King, and said: Alas Sir, do this Knight no harm, for I vow, he is the valiantest Knight breathing, he is called *Valentine* of *France*, that slew the mighty Dragon of *Antioch*; make much of

M

him

him, and retain him into your service, for his fellow lives not in the World. Lady (said the King) divers times have I heard talk of this Man, and I have much desired to have a sight of him: Then he called *Valentine* to him, and said: Knight fear not death, but know, that above all Men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay: Yet one thing still remaineth, that you must do for me; Go into *Indie*, and defie the King thereof in my Name, telling him; that I am ready prepared to revenge the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me, with a Cord about his Neck, ready to receive the sentence as by me, and my Barons shall be imposed on him: If he deny it, tell him, I will shortly visit him and his Land with War, and not leave one Town or Village unransacked; nor spare the Life of any. Sir (said *Valentine*) all this I shall gladly do, altho' I know it to be dangerous.

Then Queen *Rozamond* seeing *Valentine* ready to depart, entred into her Chamber, and by one of her Damfels, sent for him; and she said to him: Knight you are welcome, for I had a great desire to see you: So had I Lady, quoth *Valentine*, as great a desire to see you; for I understand your Husband is dead, and you are married again. Lady you know that for the Love of you (within *Antioch*) I sustained much Danger of Life: 'Tis true (said the Lady) and I acknowledge my self guilty; but now hath my Father bestowed me on King

Lucar

Lucar, who is rich above measure, yet can I not fancy him; he is a perfidious Traitor, and since you entred this Place, he grew so jealous of you, that he sends you into *Indie*, trusting you never shall return again, for never yet came any back: But I will circumvent him, and set you free from Danger: Therefore know this, that not long ago, the King of *Indie* requested me for his Wife, and the Truth is, I loved him better than this Traitor, but my Father crossed me in it, Now this King of *Indie*, in token of Love, sent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any but your self; but seeing I perceive his malice towards you. I will give you that which shall defend you from Danger, and make you return a victorious Knight; and tho' I am assured you have no need of my Love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my Heart, which for your Love lies enthralled. Therefore, when you come before the King of *Indie*, after reverence made, and Salutations from King *Lucar*, next greet him from me, as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, tho' my Father hath given me to King *Lucar*, yet his Love cannot once slip out of my Breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one Day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures; tell him also, that when King *Lucar* bringeth his Host, I will come with him; and then if there be any Valour in him, he may carry me away

whither will. No wto the End he shall not find your Words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady, quoth *Valentine*, for your Care, Love, and good will towards me, I humbly thank you, and have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your Message so effectually to the King of *Indie*, that you shall shortly receive Answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to King *Lucar*, who allowed him ten Mariners to conduct him over an Arm of the Sea, that lieth between *Esclardy* and *Indie*; so that having a prosperous Wind the next Morning they arrived at a Port two Miles from the Palace of the King of *Indie*. Then *Valentine* being arrived, he drew forth his Horse out of the Ship, and backed him; and said unto the Marriners, abide here till my return, for it shall not be long e'er I be dispatched. One of the Mariners said unto the rest, if he return, the Devil must bring him, for of fifty Messengers, not one returned again: *Valentine* heard them, but made no Answer: So he went to the City, and when he was near the Palace, he alighted of his Horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled Brow, and thought he was a Messenger, of King *Lucar's*, and said aloud to him: Art though not a Servant of King *Lucar's*? Sir, said *Valentine*, I am, and bring you Tidings that will fret your Heart; but on the other side, I bring some gladsome News from the fair *Rozamond*, that your very soul will

will leap to hear it: Messenger, know this that in the spight of King *Lucar* thou shouldst have suffered death, but for the Love and Reverence I owe to that Lady, thou shalt receive no injury, if it be so, that thou canst shew me some token from her. Yes, said *Valentine*; that I shall shew, and deliver my message so, that I will not swerve from the Truth thereof. That I belong to King *Lucar*, you know, who by me sendeth these Words; that for the death of his Father, you must come and yield to his Mercy, with a Rope about your Neck, as a Man guilty of so foul a deed, to receive sentence of Death, according to your Desert; if you refuse it, as a Messenger, I breath Defiance against you, and tell you he will shortly come, and lay waist your Land, and ransack your Dominions: Messenger, I understand thee, and set light by these his Threats; and for Answer to this Matter, thou shalt have Letters, wherein shall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his Forces that shall come to whip my Land: Therefore leave you these proud Brags, and return to that thou hast to say concerning the fair Lady *Rozamond*, for I most of all desire to hear from her: Sir, said *Valentine*, on her behalf I salute you as her Love, and she sendeth you Word that she is against her will married to King *Lucar*, whom she never loved: Again, the poor Lady is burthened with Love towards you, that if she might have her will, you

should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her but your self; for she told me that she will come hither, in the Company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accomplish your desire: By *Mahomet* (said the *Indian King*) this pleaseth me extremely: Sir (said *Valentine*) whether these come from a true Heart or no, I cannot tell; but for token that all is true that I have said receive here a Ring which you gave unto her, and tho' Women do prove variable, yet methinks she speaks of you from her inward Breast: Friend (quoth he) this is the same Ring indeed, and my Heart is overcome with Joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repose, while, in the mean time, I get the Letters ready, thou shalt take with thee to Answer this Defiance. *Valentine* went in as the King commanded, and was highly feasted, and he still demanded after *Clerimond*, but could not hear of her. By this time came the King, and delivered unto him the Letters, and *Valentine* taking his leave of him, knew not that his Love was in the Court, who abode many evil Days for the Love of him, and still desired to hear some News of him. In the end he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations, and hard Atchievements. *Valentine* made great hast to be freed out of *Indie*, and taking Horse, he came to the Haven where the Mariners staid; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had not done his
Message

Message: Masters (quoth *Valentine*) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and I am safely returned. Then the Mariners said, we much marvel thereat. At these Words he took Ship, and on the Morrow they were in *Esclardy*. *Valentine* made no stay, but as soon as he had descended his Horse, he went to the Palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King *Brandiffer*, and fourteen other Kings that were come to the Succour of King *Lucar*, against the *Indian* King: At the return of *Valentine* they wondered, for the King sent him on purpose never to return, wherefore he made *Valentine* come before them all, to tell what Tidings of his Message. *Valentine* began thus to say, he regards not all your Threats a Straw; he is fierce and proud, and says if you have a Mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth, here is a Letter sealed with his own Hand, in which you shall understand his Mind more at large. This letter being broke open, they found *Valentine's* Words to be true. King *Brandiffer* understanding this Answer, swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again but with Victory, or loss of Life.

The next Day they set sail with an Host of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried *Rozamond* along with him, and they soon arrived there. Being landed, they pitched

their Tents in a pleasant Field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their Order, so by the River side he could espy their rich Pavillions, gallantly furnished with Arms and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain Heralds at Arms, to know by those Arms whose Tents they were. The first (quoth they) is *Brandiffers*. the second is *Lucars*, and the third is *Rozamonds* with her Ladies. When the King understood that *Rozamond* was there, his Heart leap'd for Joy, and said, It is no time to sleep now, he that would have the Love of a fair Lady, must venture Life and Goods, or else he is not worthy of her. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his Men in Battle Array, and suddenly issued out of the City upon his Enemies, so that they were not in a Readiness, for they little thought the *Indian* had been so fierce, but Love made him do it. When the King saw *Brandiffer* ordering his Men in Battle Array, he left his Companions, and with much Diligence rode towards the Pavillion of the Ladies: When *Rozamond* beheld him, she gave the rest of her Company the slip, and ran eagerly into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The *Indian* perceiving her Kindness, took her up behind him, and putting Spurs to his Horse, she said, My Love is fixed only on you, and for your Love have I long mourned; for I never hated Man so much as I do King *Lucar*; but now

I pray thee, let me bid him farewell, and I will keep myself only to thee as long as I live. Lady (quoth the *Indian*) doubt not, for I will not fail you, and here I vow, e'er three Days pass you shall be Queen of *Indie*, and Mistress of all my Lands. These Words passed as he was riding away with the Lady *Rozamond*. At last the Guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavillion, and ran to the King, saying, My Lord, here is evil Tidings, for this Day you have lost the Lady *Rozamond*; for the King of *Indie*, your utter Enemy, hath stolen her hence, and is rid away with her; wherefore quickly send your Men of War and follow him, that we may save the Honour of the Queen. Hold your Peace, said *Lucar*, and talk no more, for he that hath an evil Wife, it is well if he can be rid of her, altho' he had a heavy Heart. After this he went to King *Brandisser*, and said, Sir, I have small Joy of your Daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a Stranger, and one that is your Enemy, leaving me in Reproach and Shame. Son (said *Brandisser*,) be not discontent at me, for to Day I will be revenged on him that carried her away; so putting Spurs to his Horse, rid after him, gathering a great Company of Men. Amongst the rest, *Valentine* was one willing to shew his Fidelity, and said unto *Pacolet*, Now shew me something by thy Art to gain me Honour. Then *Pacolet* raised such a Charm which so astonished the *Indian's* Eye-sight, that it seemed

to him as tho' there was nothing before his Horse but Woods, Bushes and great Rivers : At this he was so amazed, that he made the Lady alight : When the Queen was on the Ground, she thought she should find Means to get away with the King, but *Valentine* was so near to her, that he said to her, Lady, abide, for you must go with me, for you know that you long since promised me your Love. Ah *Valentine*, I owe you but little Love, for once I made Love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another ; but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield myself as your Vassal, so you will but make my Peace with *Lucar*.

Lady (said *Valentine*) I will do my Endeavour ; so he led her to King *Lucar*, and said unto him : Sir, here is the Lady *Rozamond* your Wife, whom the *Indian* Traitor had led away against her Will, for which she was right sorrowful. Sir, (quoth the Lady) what he telleth you is true, for before the Battle was began, I saw one coming towards me, and thinking it had been one of your Barons that had come to succour me, without any further Enquiry mounted on his Horse : Being on Horseback, I soon perceived that I was betrayed ; so I struggled, and pull'd him by the Hair, scratch'd his Face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the Help of this good Knight escaped. Lady (said *Lucar*) you have done well ; so he left the Lady, and returned to the Battle. They of *Indie* returned into
the

the City, having lost divers valiant Leaders; but nothing so fretted the *Indian* at the Heart, as the Loss of *Rozamond*. Alas Lady (said he) I have left thee in the greatest Extremity; but I was surely enchanted, for methought I saw before me Woods, Fields, and Rivers, but she was no sooner down upon the Ground, but all was even Way before me. *Valentine* had great Praise for getting the Lady again, and she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her; but it was all feigned, for she hated him for it, and putting up this Mischance, she watched her Opportunity, and in the End brought her Will in Execution; for some Time after, she rode forth pretending to take the Air, but took her Way towards the King of *Indie*, and given him Intelligence of her Intent, willed him, that when he saw her out of Danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his Prisoner, and carry her away. The King did according to her Direction, and suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her Horse by the Head, and led her into the City. Hereupon began a Cry throughout the Host of King *Lucar*, that *Rozamond* was surprized, and past Recovery. This vexed *Lucar* to the Heart, and he gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his Hands, should be made a great Seneschal: Sir (said *Pacolet*) keep to your Word, and in a little Time I will fetch her back. Nay, said *Valentine*, let her go. Once I regained her, thinking she

she would have been constant to her Husband, but all was in vain. The same Day that the King had her he lay with her, and begat a Son called *Rabestre*, who afterward had the Possession of *Jerusalem*. *Lucar* shewed great Sorrow for the Loss of his Wife, but *Brandiffer* his Father comforted him, saying, Son take Courage, and let us be revenged before we depart ; but it fell out otherwise, for that Day a Messenger came with these Tidings: That King *Pepin* of *France*, and the Emperor of *Greece* was entred his Land, burning and spoiling many Places, and were now upon the Siege of *Angory*, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-Bed ; therefore you must presently take a Course to stop the Fury of the Enemy, or else endure such Wracks as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went to his Son *Lucar*, and said, Son, here is evil Tidings befallen, the *French* are entered my Land, wasting and destroying all Things ; therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own ; but let me tell you what you shall do ; send some Knight unto the *Indian*, to demand your Wife, upon this Condition, That you will first forget the Death of your Father, and that you will raise your Siege and depart his Country. Wherefore he sent *Valentine* unto the King of *Indie* to declare this Message. He being come before him, said, Great King, I am come from King *Lucar*, who says, that if you will restore his Wife back again he will forget his Father's Death, and raise his Siege and be gone. To
which

which the *Indian* reply'd : If he will have a Wife he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her. *Valentine* having received this Answer, he departed and came to King *Lucar*, telling him all that the *Indian* had said, which grieved him to the very Heart.

Lucar finding it impossible to get her again, he agreed with *Brandiffer* to send *Valentine* and *Murgalant* to raise the Siege which King *Pepin* had laid against *Angory*. As they were under Sail, *Valentine* espied a Glittering, and enquired what it might be, the Mariners told him it was the Top of some Castle that stood near the Sea. Now they were come within sight of King *Pepin*'s Tents, and *Murgalant* having viewed the Christian's Forces, found the Number to be very great. Then said *Valentine*, Let us secretly send to the City to acquaint them with our coming, that to-morrow Morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our Hands. *Pacolet* standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. Quoth *Murgalant*, Go thy way : So *Pacolet* departed, but (he said to himself) by to-morrow Night you will sing another Song. *Pacolet* being come to the Gates of the City of *Angory*, the Warder said, Whither goes this Fellow? He looks like some Spy; tis true (said *Pacolet*) but I am not come for your Hurt, therefore bring me into the Host of King *Pepin*, that I may speak with my Lord *Orson*, for I have matter of great Importance to acquaint

quaint him with : So they brought him into the Presence of *Orson*, who espying him, was right joyful, and said : How fares my Brother *Valentine* ? Then *Pacolet* told him of all his Adventures that he had passed since they saw one another ; and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome a Serpent, but could hear no Tidings of *Clerimond* ; and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 100000 Pagans, under the Conduct of *Valentine* and *Murgalant*, and to chase you out of these Confines by the Command of King *Lucar*, and King *Brandiffer* ; but if you will be ruled by me, I will betray them. Quoth *Orson*, Do as thou hast said, and win immortal Praise to thy Posterity : Sir, said *Pacolet*, I am bound in all Duty to your Brother *Valentine*, but what I shall now undertake will highly please you ; first, stand you still upon your Guard, and in the Night put all your Men in Readiness, and that *Valentine* shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent; whilst I cast the Sarazen, into a deep Sleep, and then you may come upon them and slay every Man. It is good, said *Orson*, so *Orson* led him to King *Pepin*, to make him acquainted with the Enterprize, and *Pacolet* was royally entertained at that time. Now *Pacolet*, to the End there might be no Mistrust, gave certain Signs to *Murgalant*. Being in the City, he found out the Admiral *Burnas*, and saluted him

him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the Message which he brought from *Murgalant*, which was, That of *Brandiffer's* Part were now arrived 100000, and *Murgalant* sends you Word by me, that to-morrow betimes you get your Men in Readiness to assail the Christians on this side of the City, and he will assail them on the other, thereby to hem them up that not a Man of them escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these Tidings, but knew not how this should come to pass: *Pacolet* took his leave of him, and returned back to *Murgalant*, with Salutations from the Admiral: *Murgalant* thanked him for delivering his Message, and *Pacolet* departed secretly to speak with *Valentine*: When he was come, he said thus unto him; Your Brother *Orson*, and your Uncle King *Pepin* greet you well by me, to whom I have related the manner of your coming, because I would know the Plot he had in Hand, for he durst not reveal any Treason unto *Valentine*. The Night is come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted; so *Valentine* commanded the Watch to be strongly set, and would be in the Watch himself; but *Pacolet* found a way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in his Tent. In the dead time of the Night *Pacolet* went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a Charm that they fell asleep: This Opportunity was not let slip by King *Pepin*, for he with his Army entred the Host with 60000 fighting Men, and set fire to the
Tents.

Tents and Pavillions, and killed all that resisted: At last they came to the Tent of *Murgalant*, who lay asleep in his Bed, and being suddenly affrighted, leaped out, and running hastily, he received a Wound in his Body and fell down dead.

This Assault being giving on the Sarazens, *Pacolet* said unto *Valentine*, Seek to save yourself, for the Christians have killed the Watch, and entred the Host. *Pacolet* (said *Valentine*) thou hast made me break my Oath with *Brandiffer*, for which I shall surely die. Fear not (quoth *Pacolet*) for he shall do you no Harm. The next Day *Burnas* issued out of *Angory*, and set upon *Pepin's* Host, who knew not what had happened. The Battle grew both fierce and long; at last the Admiral couched his Spear, and running against a Knight of *Bay*, struck him dead; after that, with his Sword, he slew *Gyra'd* of *Paris*; then he came against *Robert* of *Normandy*, and lop'd off his Leg. At last King *Pepin* met with him, and couching his Spear, run him quite thorough: The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City; the Christians followed them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with Shot, that the Christians were forced to forsake the Walls; but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the Sword. In this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Soldiers.

C H A P. XXXVII.

How Valentine returned back to Indie, after the Battle, and carried with him the dead Body of King Murgalant : How he heard Tidings of his Father : How Pacolet forced the Indian King, and left Brandiffer in Prison. How King Lucar caused the hundred Men that watched the Indian, to be drawn to Death at Horses Tails. How Valentine and Pacolet departed secretly out of his Host, and went to Angory, and of the Vision of King Pepin : How he went into the Holy-Land with the Twelve Peers of France, and what happened : How Haufray and Henry betraycd their Father King Pepin and the Twelve Peers of France. How Caliph of Bendas made Truce between the Indian, Lucar, Brandiffer, and how he was trapped in his own Net.

THE City being taken by the Christians, Valentine found the Body of *Murgalant* in the Field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After a few Days sail they arrived where *Lucar* and *Brandiffer* were, and brought the dead Body before them in Mourning, as they sat playing at Chess : As soon as King *Lucar* saw *Valentine*, he said, Knight, welcome home, how speedeth our Forces ? Have you put the Christians to the Rout, and taken King *Pepin* and his Nephew *Orson* ?

Orson? Alas (said *Valentine*) is has fallen out quite contrary, for we have lost the Field, and all our Men are slain: For King *Farin*, who had the whole Charge of the Watch, let his Men sleep, and so the Christians came and made great Havock of our Army: But as soon as I heard of this, I awaked my Men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this Battle was slain your Uncle *Murgalant*, whose Body I have here brought: This Spectacle fretted *Brandiffer* to the Heart, that in Madnes he threw away the Chels-board, and said, Surely *Valentine* thou wert the Cause of this. Quoth *Valentine*, I return him the Lie that says so, and I will maintain my Innocence with my Sword. Nay (said King *Lucar*) if he had plotted any Treason, he would never have come again. Then *Brandiffer* commanded the Body to be royally interred. This News gladded the *Indian*, and hereupon gathering up all his Forces, he issued out of the City: The Battle being begun, *Valentine* threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last, meeting the *Indian* King, he smote him off his Horse; *Pacolet* seeing him down, seized him, and *Valentine* and he led him to the Tent of King *Brandiffer*: When Tidings came that the *Indian* King was taken, he called unto his Men, saying, Follow hard, and the Day is our own; so they entred the Battle, and drove the *Indians* to a Retreat. When *Brandiffer* saw they with-drew, they followed

followed them to the Gates, where fell on both Sides a great Slaughter : The Battle lasted till Night ; so *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* betook them to their Tents, and ordered the *Indian* King to be brought before them : When King *Lucar* saw him, he said unto him ; Traitor, the end of thy Life is now at hand : The *Indian* understood him, but said never a Word. King *Lucar* had no sooner ended his rough Speech, but there arrived a Messenger, who said unto *Brandiffer*, I bring you sad Tidings, O King, for *Pepin* of *France* hath taken the City of *Angory*, and put to the Sword Man, Women, and Children. These are ill Tidings indeed (quoth *Brandiffer*) but seeing we have the King of *Indie* in Subjection, I hope shortly to free my own Country. Then he said to King *Lucar* : Son, we have the King of *Indie* in hold, let us make short Work with him, and to-morrow Morning let him be hanged up ; which being done, we will go to *Angory* against the *French*, and take Vengeance for these Wrongs done to me : Also I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperor of *Greece*, and the *Green Knight* Prisoners, who at my coming shall suffer Death : *Valentine* being present, was glad to hear of his Father ; so by a Sign he acquainted *Pa-colet*, that he should very shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that he would find some means to release them out of Prison ; also the *Indian* King looked wishfully

wishfully on *Valentine*, and said thus to himself, cursed be that Hour that thou escapest my Hands, for had I put thee to death, these Dangers had never befallen me.

Then King *Lucar* called a strong guard of armed Sarazens, and said unto them, keep well this Traitor, and to Morrow he shall be hanged: So they took him, and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the Middle to a Post, and so left him, falling to play again: Now *Valentine* called *Pacolet* to him; saying, I am half in a doubt whether *Brandiffer* have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have endangered my Body, as I have done in his service: But now is the Time to be revenged: Sir (quoth *Pacolet*) you have small Reason to bear good will, therefore (if you please) I will find a way to free the *Indian King*, and to deliver *Brandiffer* into his Hands, so may your Uncle *Pepin* hold *Angory* still: This, quoth, *Valentine*, should be worthy of thanks, wherefore prosecute thy Plot, that so I may help my Uncle, and deliver my Father: *Pacolet* having an Eye to what he would do, after Supper, came among those hundred that had the charge of the *Indian King*: After they had made a Fire without the Pavillion, *Pacolet* cast them all into a dead Sleep: Having so done, he went to the *Indian King*, and said: Noble King, be glad in me, for I am *Mabomet*, and am come to set thee free: Then go thou to thy Palace, and bare along with thee *Brandiffer*,

ser, who shall not know whether he goeth :
 Alas ! said the *Indian* to *Pacolet* taking him for
Mahomet, it should seem that I have deserved
 well at thy Hands, when thou tookest so
 much pains to come down, and deliver me
 from death : King, said *Pacolet* trust in me,
 and the Counsel of the wise : Herewith *Pacolet*
 led him towards *Brandiffer*, causing all the
 Watch to fall into a dead Sleep ; and so en-
 charmed him, that he arose, made him ready,
 and went along with the *Indian* King to his
 Palace.

The *Indian* being thus set free, gave thanks
 to *Mahomet* for his delivery : then *Pacolet*
 brought him a Horse, made him mount, and
 set *Brandiffer* behind him, and sent them pack-
 ing for *Indie*, and so took his leave : At last
 the *Indian* came to the Gates of his own City,
 and calling the Porter, was instantly let in :
 When *Rozamond* beheld him, she said : Sir,
 you are right welcome home, but tell me how
 you came by my Father, that you have brought
 him with you ? is there a Peace concluded ?
 No (quoth the King) *Mahomet* delivered him
 into my Hands, and freed me from Death :
 So by this time ended the Vigor of the Charm,
 and *Brandiffer* awaking, began to say, how came
 I hither ? Some Devil hath enchanted me :
 Nay said the King, *Mahomet* hath brought us
 hither, that you may be at peace with me : I
 had rather die, therefore set me free, that I
 may go to my Host again. Not so, for since
 you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the
 Sarazens

Sarazens that guarded the *Indian*, lay still asleep. At the break of Day *Lucar* came to the Pavillion where the *Indian* lay, but when the Pagans saw him, they cry'd for Mercy, for they had lost their Prisoner. Varlets, quoth *Lucar*, your Lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along the Streets, at Horses Tails, and after hanged, whereat *Pacolet* laughed, but *Valentine* said, friend, I shall never be at ease till I have found out my Father, whom *Brandiffer* keepeth in Prison. Here *Valentine* and *Pacolet* leave the Pagans, and after travel to hear Tidings of the Lady *Clerimond*.

You have heard before how King *Pepin* took *Angory*: So now will I make plain to you the Manner of a Treason toward him by *Haufray* and *Henry*, it happened as the King was in Bed in *Angory*, he dreamt a Dream to this Effect: He thought that he beheld a Maf-Priest, shewing unto him divers Relicks, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre, and three times this Apparition troubled him: The Morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, and declared unto them the Manner of this Dream, and said unto them: Lords, I know not what may befall, but I think it some Delusion; or else it may be that I should go to visit the Holy Places without the City of *Jerusalem*. Then spake *Orson*, I will go with you if you please; and I also, quoth *Myllon Dauglar*: After the twelve Peers offered themselves unto him, to assist him in his Pilgrimage

mage. The King hearing them so forward, gave them Thanks, and calling before him *Haufray* and *Henry*, he said unto them, you know that you are my own Sons, but yet in such time was you gotten, when I had not one Foot of Land in *France*, therefore it is my will, you enjoy this Land of *Angory*, therefore keep it valiantly. Then *Haufray* said to *Henry*: You understand the King our Father well, do you not? he will prefer us to strange Lands; as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: Now as for his young Son *Charles*, he provideth to leave him King of *France*, and we must be content with a Foreign part: Therefore be rul'd by me, and *Pepin* shall never return into *France*, to establish his Heir. We will work a Plot to deliver him into the Hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be King of *France*, and Emperors of *Rome*; all which I thirst after. Brother (quoth *Henry*) your Words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished: *Haufray* said, I shall tell thee how, go unto King *Brandiffer*, and tell him that I must have his Daughter *Galazy*: And being with him tell him that King *Pepin* and the twelve Peers of *France* do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, and they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but few in Train. Brother this will do well, wherefore make hast to *Indie*, there you shall find *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, When you have found them, acquaint them with the Plot, and I will go along with

with them: So, so, quoth *Haufray*, for I shall never be quiet till this Business be finished. Thus had they plotted Treason against their Father, who now was on the Seas, thinking to accomplish their Pilgrimage. *Henry* going along with them, and *Haufray* hath likewise taken his way towards *Indie*. So leave we them, and return to other Matters. The *Caliph* of *Bandas* being come into the Host of *Brandiffer*, and *Lucar* treated a Truce for a Month, between them and the King of *Indie*: So appointing a Day for to meet thereupon, the *Caliph* began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you that the Christians have won the Realm of *Angory*, I wonder that you continue here maintaining a needless War, and suffer the Enemy to grow upon you in a place of such Import: Therefore listen a while to what I shall declare. True it is that the King of *India* slew your Father *Trompart*, for that he killed his Uncle, this was one for another. Therefore let the *Indian* deliver *Brandiffer*, and as for *Rozamond*, let her be brought and set between the two Kings, *Lucar* and the *Indian*: And if she will stay with the *Indian* let her; if she will go with *Lucar*, let him receive her. This his Counsel was generally accepted, and *Rozamond* was brought forth, whereupon the *Caliph* propounded the Matter for which she was called. *Rozamond* having heard what was said, she resolved to keep with the *Indian* King; and *Lucar* departed very sorrowful. The same Day that the *Ca-*

liph

Caliph made this Confession, *Haufray* came unto the Host of *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, making hast to their Pavillions, he saluted them; unto whom *Brandiffer* said: What Wind hath driven you hither? Sir (said *Haufray*) that I have to deliver craveth Secresie and Attention. So they drew from their Attendants, and then *Haufray* said: Lords, you know that I am Son to *Pepin* of *France*, and I also understand that you (speaking to *Brandiffer*) have a beautiful Daughter; now if it please you to give me your Daughter in Marriage, I will deliver into your Hands my Father, and all the Peers of *France*, that have so much damnified you; for know, that in the Habit of Pilgrims they have taken their Journey to visit the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, slenderly accompanied; quoth *Brandiffer*, for these Tidings I will give thee my Daughter *Galazy*, but it must be upon Condition that you renounce your Faith, Yes, quoth *Haufray*, that shall I do: When King *Brandiffer* saw the Treachery of *Haufray*, first that he would betray his Father, next forsake his Religion, he with-drew himself to advise with *Lucar* and the *Caliph*, saying unto them; you see the Treasons of this Man, that demandeth my Daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the Death of his Father, and ruin of the whole state of *France*? No, I will not make my Peace with such a Homicide, I had rather see my Daughter's death, than give her to a vile Traitor. After these Words he called to *Haufray*, and said

N

Sir,

Sir, I am glad of your coming, and this shall be your Task, you shall go to my Daughter, and bear this Letter from me, there pass away your time till we have leasure to resolve on your Business. Sir, said *Haufray*, I am ready to accomplish your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, and a hundred Men to conduct him on his way: After they were at Sea, within a few Days they came within sight of the strong Castle where *Galazy* was; when they were come to the Gate, the Porter called to them, saying; My Lords, you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said *Haufray*, tell the Lady we shall satisfy her. The Porter went to the Lady, and said, Lady, without the Gate stands a Company of Men that fain would enter, and as I think they are come from your Father. The Lady bid her Gentleman Usher go and know what they were, who did as she commanded; as soon as she understood they came from her Father, she bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate, so *Haufray* entred, and thought all this had been for his good; but it fell out contrary. Being entred the Castle he was brought before the Lady *Galazy*, whose Beauty then amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one Word. After some space of time he saluted the Lady, and said unto her; fair Sovereign, know that for the great renown that I have heard of your admirable Beauty, I have left my Country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him
happy

happy; and for that you shall find me speak nothing but Truth, see, here is a Letter by me from him. The Lady taking the Letter, read it; when she had read it, she beheld *Haufray*, saying, Vassal, I have read the Letter, and find thee a Christian, and that thou hast sold the Life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of *France*; all this my Father certifieth by his Letter to me, and commandeth me, that I determine what shall be done to thee. Now I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take pity, nor mercy upon such a Wretch as thou art; so she called to her Officers, and committed him to Prison in a dark Dungeon: *Haufray* seeing what had happened, said; It is a bitter Marriage to me; and so he was convey'd out of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon lay the Emperor of *Greece* and the *Green Knight*; and when they heard they should have another fellow Prisoner, the Emperor, as soon as he came in, demanded of him whence he was? *Haufray* said, it is no Matter of whence, but I am that unhappy *Haufray* Son of King *Pepin*. Why, quoth the Emperor, I am the Emperor of *Greece*, can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother King *Pepin*, my two Sons, and with the residue of the Peers of *France*? Sir (said *Haufray*) they are in this Country of *Angory*, and have won the same in Battle. So leave we them in Prison, and return to *Valentine* and *Pacolet*.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

How Valentine and Pacolet came before the Castle: How Pacolet raised up the Devil, to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle: How Brandiffer brought the Twelve Peers of France into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them: How he besieged the City of Angory. And how Brandiffer having knowledge that Lucar was Captive in Angory, proposed to Valentine, to deliver him up on a sufficient Ransome.

AFTER many Days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, and viewing it strangely, thought it impregnable; at last *Pacolet* said, Sir, anon I will tell you more: So he went aside, and cast a Figure, and incontinently there appeared unto him a Devil, who said unto him: Leave off your Enterprize, for the Castle is not to be taken, but by Treason, so vanished: Suddenly after his departure, there arose a great Smoak about the Castle, inso-much that *Valentine* lost the sight of *Pacolet*, and was driven into an amazement. This Mist being dispersed, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine*, And said, let us depart, for there is no way to Conquer this Castle, but by Treason: So they forsook the Castle, and went towards *Angory*: Being there, they demanded Tidings of King *Pepin*, but it was answered, he was gone to *Jerusalem* on Pilgrimage; so *Valentine* resolved

resolved to stay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain; for by the Treason of *Haufray*, King *Pepin* was surprized by *Brandiffer*, as you shall hear. King *Pepin* being come to *Jerusalem*, by the Direction of certain Guides, they were conducted to the Holy Place. During the time of their abode here in *Jerusalem*, came *Brandiffer*, the *Indian King*, and King *Lucar*, (having had intelligence by *Haufray*) accompanied with a great Host of Men, and marched so far, that they came to the King of *Jury*; being come unto him, he did very much Marvel at their coming; and after Salutations, demanded the Cause: Then spake *Brandiffer*; Sir, know this, that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this Holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is King *Pepin* of *France*, the rest are the twelve Peers; if it be so, we crave your Aid and Assistance: For they are unto us mortal Enemies, and have taken from me my City of *Angory*, making great waste within my Territories; wherefore we desire you, that they may be delivered into our Hands, that we may proceed against them according to our law. Your demand is reasonable (quoth the King of *Jury*) therefore let it be done according to your wish; for I am an Enemy to all such as shall deride us, and our Religion. I will send unto the Patriarch about this Matter, and if he have any such *French* Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before you. The Patriarch being sent for, went unto the Pilgrims,

grims, and said, Friends, you must come before the King of *Jury*: Hereat *Pepin* grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his Life; therefore said, Lords let us here make *Henry* our Lord, and I will wait upon him as his Page bearing his Hat and Staff; *Henry*



being too skilful in Treasons denied it, saying, here's *Orson*, and the Duke of *Myllon*, more worthier than I, let them take it upon them. Quoth *Myllon*, as you please I shall do any thing: Then they took their way toward the Pagan that sent for them, Duke *Myllon* took upon him the Person of the King, and the King bear his Hat and Staff: The Patriarch, after he had delivered them to the King of *Jury* he departed, and the King said unto them;

them: It is told me you are all *Frenchmen*, come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of *France*: Sir (said one of the Company) the King of *France* is not here: How! not here? (quoth the King of *Jury*) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous Death. Then spake *Henry*, it is not I. At these Words Duke *Myllon* doubted Treason: And said, Sir, I am the King of *France*, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of Note; we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws and Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid and observed; therefore you do us much wrong to detain us contrary to your Custom. Say what you will, quoth *Jury*, but to Spies there is no such Privileges allowed; and now he called forth *Brandiffer* and *Lucar*, and said unto them, Lords, these be the Christian Spies, take them, and do with them as pleaseth you, then the Pilgrims were laid hold on, and *Brandiffer* said, Lords, let these be conveyed to my strongest Castle, and put them into the deepest Dungeon; and let us make hast to *Angory*, and beat out all our Enemies, after that into *France*, and bring that to our Subjection; all this may be easily effected, since we have all the Peers thereof in Captivity; so that there is not a Man of worth to make Resistance: This done, the *Indian* King required he might have the little Prisoner to make his Dwarf of (which

was King *Pepin*) his request was likewise granted, so he took him with him, and loved him exceedingly.

The *Indian* King taking his leave, every one of the Peers look'd pitifully on King *Pepin*, but durst not speak to him: *Pepin* being on his way with the *Indian*, began thus to lament: How unfortunate am I among them? Alas Duke *Myllon*, it grieves me most for thee; for thy Love towards me hath brought thy self in danger: But for my Son *Henry*, I will lay my Curse on thee, that refused to relieve thy Father in his extremity: Farewel *Bertha* my Wife, and my young Son *Charles*, thy case is most dangerous; for what will not Traitors attempt against thee? By this time is the *Indian* come home into his own Land. When the Lady *Rozamond* saw his approach, she was right glad, and received him with kindness, at last she threw her Eyes on King *Pepin*, and demanded of the King, where he had that little Man: Lady, said he, he was given me at *Jerusalem*, being come thither with the King of *France*, &c. But now let us return to speak somewhat of *Clerimond*, who was in the Court of the *Indian* King: The King's Manner was to send her every Meal of the best Meat from his own Table, and one Night at Supper, called *Pepin* to him, for to carry her Provision, saying unto him: Go into the great Chamber on the other side of the Court, there shalt thou find a foolish Woman, give this from me to her; *Pepin* did
as

as he commanded; but when he saw her in those Rags, he said to her: I pity your distressed state: When the Lady heard him say so, she said, Friend, pity thy self; let me alone, I am not what I seem to be: But tell me, art thou a Christian? Lady, said *Pepin*, I am; and come from the Realm of *France*. Then the Lady, with a smiling Countenance said: Know you then King *Pepin*, and his Nephew *Valentine*? Ay, quoth he, and his Brother *Orson*, and his Father the Emperor of *Greece*. The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed Tears, and yet spake, saying, Friend, may I put trust in you? Ay, said he, even as well as if I were your own Father: Then know, all that I have done, is but counterfeit? for I am a Christian, and the woful Love of *Valentine*, that was given to him as his Wife, but was betrayed, and stolen away by King *Trompart*: Then she unfolded the Manner of all these things. When King *Pepin* heard the lamentable Adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself, thus: Ha! what trust is in this World; alas for this poor Lady! alas for *Valentine*! and yet to see it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlook'd for Adventure: After he had ended these Lamentations, he said: Lady, now I understand whom you are, and since you trusted me with the Secrets of your Heart, give me leave also a little to shew you who I am: Here you see me, and in what shape I go cloathed; yet know, I am

Pepin King of *France*, and by Misfortunes, am fallen into this servitude : As for *Valentine*, he undertaketh dangerous Adventures, and continueth still without taking any rest : Now I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make these things known to him, with great Joy you may embrace each other : At these Words the Lady was wounded, but he seeing her recovered, left her, and came unto the King. So here we rest as to this Matter, and return to say somewhat of *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* who are busied in leading the twelve Peers of *France* to Prison.

Brandiffer having the twelve Peers in Prison, and with them *Haufray* and *Henry*, the only workers of the Treason, came to this Castle, where he told all the whole Enterprize to his Daughter, how the twelve Peers fell into his Hand : Having finished his Tale, he put them into the Dungeon where the Emperor, the *Green Knight*, and *Haufray* lay : *Henry* was much troubled that he durst not discover his Mind to *Brandiffer* ; for he was the first that was led into the Dungeon, after him *Myllon Daugler*, who by chance fell upon *Haufray*, which made him angry : Be not angry, quoth he, for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place : *Haufray* knew it was Duke *Myllon*, and demanded of him, by what Means he came thither ? Nay, quoth *Myllon*, I rather wonder how you came here, for I am sure we left you within the City of *Angory*. Quoth the Traitor, I
was

was taken for a Spy, and for that Cause I am hither brought. Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison; but when *Haufray* understood that King *Pepin* was not among them, he seemed exceeding glad, tho' in his Heart could wish his Death. Every one looked for nothing but Death, save only *Orson*, he bare it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my Brother *Valentine* and *Pacolet*, who by Enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. *Brandiffer*, having thus made all sure, called before him his Daughter *Galazy*, and said unto her: I must depart to satisfy mine Army; being there, I shall meet with the *Indian King* and *Lucar*, both which will aid me against the *French*, that holdeth the City of *Angory*, therefore keep well my Prisoners, and when he came unto his Army, he found *Lucar* ready, but as for the *Indian King* he sent his Forces, and came not himself, by Reason that *Rozamond* was lately Dead. The Two Kings gathered up their Forces, and took their way towards *Angory*, whither being come, *Valentine* had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for King *Pepin*. This much amazed the noble *Valentine*, when he saw the Tents so nigh him: At last he called *Pacolet* unto him, saying, I wonder I hear not of my Uncle *Pepin*. Fear not, said *Pacolet*, for e'er long we will hear better News; and therewithal departed from *Angory*, and never rested till he came to the Camp of King *Lucar*, who espying him, demanded

demanded of him what News, and what was become of his Master, who so long time he had served? *Pacolet* answered, Sir, he is long since dead, and I come to seek a new Master. Quoth *Lucar*, wilt thou serve me? Yes, quoth *Pacolet*. Thus was he received into his service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for that same Night by Enchantment, he cast *Lucar* into such a Sleep, that he carried him into the City of *Angory*. *Valentine* was right glad of this, and *Lucar* being placed before a Fire, the Enchantment ceased, and he awoke. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, and at last *Pacolet* said unto him: Master, I am at your service, have you any thing to command me; at which Words *Lucar* grew much enraged, and taking a Knife, gave *Pacolet* such a Wound, that he fell down dead. *Valentine* seeing this Accident was right sorrowful, and said: Such another Friend I shall never have; false Traitor, quoth he, thou hast slain him that was all my hope, then said *Lucar*, I am glad that Traitor is slain.

Now *Valentine* went towards the dead Corps, and took out of his Bosom a Pair of writing Tables, in which was Written the Manner of his Art. These Tables had *Pacolet* made *Valentine* acquainted withal, wishing him that if he out lived him, he should make great Account of them; so *Valentine* put them up, and after made use of them: Here would *Valentine* have King *Lucar* put to death, but being

ing better advised, he was safely kept in Prison; if it be so that any worthy Person should be taken by the Pagans, then *Lucar* should serve for the Ransome of the other. Then *Valentine* caused the Body of *Pacolet* to be honourably interred, whose death was bewailed of all. The next Morning there arose an out-cry throughout the whole Army, that *Lucar* was gone no Man knew how; amongst the rest *Brandiffer* made great Lamentation, till one told him he was in *Angory*, and how he had slain *Pacolet*, *Brandiffer* was glad *Pacolet* was slain, but sorry for *Lucar*; at last calling to him a Messenger, he sent to *Valentine* to ask him if he would deliver *Lucar* for King *Pepin*, the Emperor or *Orson*, or any other of the twelve Peers of *France*; the Messenger departed on his way with these Conditions, and coming to the City of *Angory*, he desired to speak with *Valentine*: After Salutations on both Sides, he declared his message from King *Brandiffer*, *Valentine* hearing the Effect of this Message, was much amazed, and said to the Messenger, how cometh it to pass, that *Brandiffer* can make choice of all these valiant Men? Quoth the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how King *Pepin*, accompanied with the twelve Peers of *France* not long since went to *Jerusalem*, and having among them one Traitor was delivered into the Hand of *Brandiffer*, and by him taken in *Jerusalem*, and committed to Prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the Truth,

Will

Will you change one Prisoner for another? Messenger I shall give Answer to thee presently; so entring the Hall, he assembled unto him all his Council, saying to them. Thus it is, that for our Prisoner *Lucar*, we may have delivered unto us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle King *Pepin*: Now in this Case let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your own Father, therefore we Judge it most necessary for him to be released. Lords, (quoth *Valentine*) you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know that my Mother was wrongfully banished, and so in exile brought me forth, and my Brother, in the Forest of *Orleanse*, where I might have been devoured of Beasts, if my Uncle *Pepin* had not taken me up. Thus he nourished and brought me up to Men's estate: After he made me a Knight, and bestowed on me many Preferments; therefore I say these Things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for King *Lucar*; he being at liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my Father, and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the Wisdom of *Valentine*, they agreed all with one Voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they to them the Messenger of *Brandiffer*, and said: Friend, return this Answer to thy Master, that we shall willingly yield the Body of King *Lucar*, upon Condition that he deliver unto us the Body of King *Pepin*: So the Messenger

senger departed; being returned home, he delivered his message as *Valentine* had delivered it to him, whereupon *Brandiffer* swore by the Gods, he should have his Request.

C H A P. XXXIX.

How Myllon Daugler (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of King Lucar: How Valentine and the Duke of Myllon issued out of Angory, and won the Battle from the Sarazens: How King Pepin was delivered in change for the King of Indie's Marshal: How King Pepin left Angory, and returned into France, to succour his Wife.

B *Randiffer* understanding *Valentine's* Mind, he suddenly dispatched the Messengers to his Daughter *Galazy*, who kept the strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these Messengers the King of *France*, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her Father's Mind; readily obeyed, calling before her the Goaler of the Prison, and commanded him to call forth the King of *France*; the Goaler went to the Prison, calling for the King of *France*, for I'm commanded to set him at liberty. Duke *Myllon* hearing him say so, could not satisfy himself; but in a doubting Manner said, I am here, if it be so, I am the first that must suffer Death, I am ready to lay it down for my Religion. Sir (quoth the Goaler)

ler) it is no such a Thing, for you are to be delivered Body for Body, to ransome another Pagan King which resideth in Captivity amongst the Christians. When *Henry* heard these Words, he repented he denyed to take upon him the Person of the King. Thus Duke *Myllon* took his leave with Tears: The Emperor of *Greece* said unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my Son *Valentine*, and me too, quoth *Orson*, and tell him in what misery we be, requesting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our Lives; *Myllon* comforted them all he could, and said: Lords, I will not return into *France*, till I see you at liberty, and so he took his way. Being out of Prison, he went to the Lady *Galaxy*, and did unto her Reverance, which she kindly accepted, and commanded him to his Fortunes: So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for the King of *France*. When they were come before *Brandisser*, he said unto him; King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, and to that end I have appointed these Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of *Angory* to *Valentine*, and in your stead send me back my Son *Lucar*, as he hath promised. Sir, quoth the Duke, all this shall be done to your Mind, and if he will not deliver King *Lucar* according to your Expectation, I will willingly come accordingly to your Mercy. Royally spoke, quoth *Brandisser*, I ask no more. So the

the Duke took leave, and departed with the Messengers towards *Angory*. After few Days they arrived at the Palace where *Valentine* lay, being in sight one of another, they ran and embraced each other. Afterwards Duke *Myllon* took *Valentine* aside, and related to him the whole Course of his Actions, and how King *Pepin* was led away by the *Indian* King, who knew not who he was, and how that he had taken upon him the King's Name, only to keep him from danger. When *Valentine* heard this, he thanked him for his Deed, and began to recount what a benefit had happened to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds; for by your true Loyalty to your Sovereign you are escaped from danger. Then *Valentine* caused King *Lucar* to be brought before him, and said: King *Lucar*, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my Hands, I shall remember you for the Death of my friend *Pacolet*. These Words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: Now was *Lucar* delivered, and the Duke of *Myllon* restored in his stead: *Valentine* having gathered more strength, by adding unto his Powers the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered Troops into Battle-array, and with the Number of fifty thousand fighting Men, they issued out of the City upon the Enemy. *Brandiffer* hearing thereof, made up against him, accompanied with twenty four Kings, his Attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their Number was

so

so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then *Valentine* resolved to give a new Onset upon the Pagans, and courageously heartening his Men, he set upon that part where was *Brandiffer*, and King *Lucar*. In the thickest of the Battle, an Admiral (who was Lord of *Massidon*) espying a *Frenchman* making havoc with his Sword among the Pagans, he made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, he clave his Head in two Pieces: He was espied by another Cavalier, who made towards this Admiral, in the presence of *Myllon Daugler*, smote him dead: For which Act of Valour *Myllon* knighted him, and said among them all: That he that won Valour should receive the like reward. This Battle continued all the that Day. At last they strove on each part which should sound a Retreat first, but neither side would yield, so that they continued all Night, making great Fires to give them light. At break of Day the Battel began afresh in a most fierce Manner, that Blood ran down as Water in Channels.

Valentine and Duke *Myllon* behaved themselves right valiantly, on every side they beat down both Horse and Man. But *Valentine* was too forward, for he entred so far into the Enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of *Brandiffer*. Being there, the *Indian* Admiral espied him, who ran so fiercely at him, that he flew *Valentine's* Horse under him, who perceiving himself unhorfed, a light-
ed

ed, lightly got upon his Feet, and with his Sword, hewed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not the Duke of Myllon



by chance relieved him with a fresh Horse. So *Valentine* retired himself out of the Battle to refresh his tired Limbs. When the *Indian* Marshal saw their side had the worst, he by his policy withdrew his Forces, and in the Night time drew out of sight, so that at last they took them to their Heels and run away.

Valentine perceiving it, told Duke *Myllon* thereof, so they determined that *Valentine* and his Troops should set upon the Marshal, which they did, and fell upon the *Indians* in such a furious Manner, that they, upon their first adventure, broke their Battelarray. The Marshal seeing it, thought to have fled, but *Valentine* meeting him at this Advantage,

Advantage, lent him such a rap with his Spear, as both Horse and Man fell to the Earth. Being on the Ground, the Soldiers would have killed him, had not *Valentine* charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the custody of four valiant Knights.

In this Battle there was many Prisoners of great Account taken, all which *Valentine* sent into *Angory*, to be kept in Safety. By this time, *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* knew that they had the worst, but they could make no Resistance. At last they resolved to return again into their own Countrys, and renew their Forces afresh ; so wrapping up their Ensigns, they took their way towards the Sea-Coast, and the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them. Of all the Pagans that went into the Field but 100 escaped. They being gone, the Christians rifling their Tents, found inestimable Treasure, and having so done, they returned to *Angory*, to rest their tired Limbs. After the Christians had won the Battle, and given Burial to the Dead, *Valentine* commanded the Prisoners to be brought before him : Amongst the rest was the Marshal of *Indie*, of whom he demanded if he would forsake his *Mabometry* ? The Marshal answered, He would sooner lose his Life than forsake his Religion. Then Duke *Myllon* demanded of what Country he was, he said, I am a Marshal of *Indie*, and one whom the King loveth. Quoth *Myllon* to *Valentine*, We are made happy in this Prisoner, for in
Exchange

Exchange of him we shall release King *Pepin*, who was led away by the *Indian* King, to be his Dwarf, when we were taken Prisoners at *Jerusalem*. Then they demanded of him if the King had not in his Possession a Christian of low Stature : Yes, quoth he, there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his Prisoner, and thither was he brought when the Twelve Peers of *France* were taken in *Jerusalem*. Marshal, quoth *Valentine*, it is he after whom we enquire ; wherefore let him be brought hither, and delivered to us, and you shall be set at Liberty ; for he is a Page whom I ever loved, and who always attended on my Person. At these Words the Marshal rejoiced, and sent Letters to the *Indian* King, who receiving them, was willing to change, for he knew not that it was King *Pepin*, and calling him before him, he said, Friend, I give you free Liberty to depart my Country, for my Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be surrendred in your stead : King *Pepin* thanked him, and taking his leave of the King, he ran unto the Lady *Clerimond*, and said, Lady, take good Heart, for I am set at Liberty, and I will send *Valentine* unto you, who will soon release you. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful, and *Pepin* departed with the Messengers towards *Angory*. In a few Days they arrived there, where the *Frenchmen* spared no Cost to shew their Love for King *Pepin* ; at last *Valentine* said : Uncle, we had good Hap in taking the Marshal, and

and by that Means procured your Liberty. Nephew (said King *Pepin*) you above all Men have most cause to rejoice, for I bring you the happiest News that ever you heard ; fair *Clerimond*, whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by my means sendeth you her Love ; then he related her Misfortunes, and how she had demeaned herself, to shun the Love of the *Indian King*. *Valentine* hearing this joyful News, he uttered these Words : Dear Lady, thou hast bought Love at too dear a Rate, and cursed may I be if I prove false ; and for Trial hereof, I will either purchase thy Freedom, or lose my Life. This Speech being ended, the Marshal was delivered. Then *Valentine* went to his Chamber to try the Tables that he took out of *Pacolet's* Bosom, when he was slain, and found every thing set down to fall out just as it was now come to pass, and taking Pen, Ink, and Paper, he wrote down what he there found, and sowing it unto his Doublet, for fear of losing it ; and it afterwards stood him in great stead for the safe-guard of his Life, as will hereafter appear. King *Pepin* being resident in *Angory*, News was brought him from his Wife *Bertha*, that all *France* was doubtful of his Life, and of the twelve Peers of *France*, because they heard they were taken Prisoners by the Pagans at *Jerusalem*. This Report running so current throughout *France*, hath caused *Arthur* King of *Britain* to enter the Kingdom with a great Army, and to get the Crown of *France*

by

by Violence : Also the said *Arthur* hath committed your young Son *Charles* to Exile. When King *Pepin* heard these Tidings, he grew wonderful desperate, and presently called together all his Barons, and sat in Council what was requisite to be done in in such a Plot : At last it was resolved, that King *Pepin* in Person should depart into his own Land, to suppress the Usurper ; but *Valentine* began to speak to the King in this manner : Noble Uncle, it were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my Father, and the twelve Peers of *France* : Do so (quoth King *Pepin*) and if it falls out that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh Supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more Ease compass what you intend to do.



CHAP.

C H A P. XL.

How Valentine under the Shape of a Physician, went into Indie, to see and speak with Clerimond ; how he rode away with her. How the King of Britain was given to King Pepin by Treason. How Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father and all the rest of the Prisoners. How the Emperor, Orson and the Green Knight kept a strong Garrison in the Castle. How Haufray and Henry caused their Father to be put to Death. How the Emperor of Greece, Orson, and the Green Knight left the Castle, and came to the Succour of Valentine in Angory : How the Christians issued out of the City of Angory, and gave Battle to the Sarazens. How Valentine ignorantly slew his Father. How Myllon Daugler returned into France, and Valentine and Orson into Greece.

YOU have already, that King Pepin brought News unto *Valentine* of the Lady *Clerimond*, which as soon as he heard, he could not keep it out of his Mind ; at last he resolved to pass from *Angory* to *Indie*, accompanied with one Esquire, and in the shape of a Physician, he went to Sea with the *Indian Merchant* ; being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inholder's House, till his Gown and other Habilitments were in Readiness : At the first Entrance into this Inn, the Host asked him
what

what he was? He said a Physician, and could cure any manner of Disease: The Host believed him, and his Squire served him as his Apothecary or Clerk: In this Manner, lying there about four or five Days, he called his Host to him, and desired him to get a Man to go about the City to make known his Art, and see who needed Help that I may cure them; for I would get something to defray my Charge, while I stay in your House; but in the mean Time, rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good Pawn: Marry (quoth the Host) with all my Heart, I accept of your Gage: So *Valentine* delivered him a rich Mantle, furred quite thro' with costly Furrs, and bad him bring before him that Party that should make known his Art: The Host went out and brought him a ragged Fellow; *Valentine* was glad of such a Fellow as this, and new cloathed him from Head to Foot, and said unto him: My Friend, go thy ways into the City, and give out, that there is come a Physician, that can heal all Diseases; even mad Men and Women he will undertake to cure.

This Fellow did as he was commanded, and went from place to place to publish this Doctor's Skill: At last it came to the Ears of the King, who was a little rejoiced, because he had given out, he could recover mad Folks to their former Senses; so the King having still a great Respect for the Lady *Clerimond*, sent for this Phylician, who had before him many Cripples, blind, lame and crooked; but he

left them all and came unto the King, for there lay the Mark at which he aimed: Being come before the King, he did his Obeisance in the Name of the great God *Jupiter*, and the King said unto him: Sir, you are welcome to my Court, first dine, and then I shall tell you the cause of my sending for you. The King being set and served, ordered also that *Valentine* should be richly attended, and Dinner being ended, he said unto him: Sir, I have a beautiful Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, but she would not consent till the Term of one Year was expired: I granted what she desired, but at the end of the Year she was possessed with a Lunacy, insomuch that none durst come near her; sometimes she whistles, then crieth out in a pitiful manner; another time she laugheth, and then falleth into a Flood of Tears, so that my Heart is over-whelmed with Sorrow for her: Now if by your Skill you can cure her, I will give you as much Wealth as you desire, for my Wife *Rozamond* being dead, I would make her Queen of *Indie*. My Lord (quoth *Valentine*) fear not, for she shall do well; but she is the harder to be cured, by reason that she hath been troubled with the Distemper so long: Again, I must be with her all Night, to mark the manner of her Fits: You shall (quoth the King) have one appointed to conduct you thither, but look to yourself lest she do you some Harm.

Then

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided *Valentine* to her Window, but he said to the Servant, Go thy way, and leave me alone. When *Valentine* beheld her in this Condition, he said, Alas! my Love, you have bought me as dear as I have you; but by the Gods, I swear, I will never return again to *France* till I have you along with me, or here lose my Life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, and whatsoever came first to hand she threw at him, which much amazed him; then said *Valentine*, Is this true Madness, or but feigned: Dear Love, tell me true, I am *Valentine* your Love, for whom I have suffered much; think of the Brazen Head that you gave me, or of my Brother *Orson*, that had the String cut in his Mouth, or how you were stolen away by the Enchanter *Adrimain*. When the Lady heard this, she fell into a Swoon for Joy; but being again recovered, she said: Alas! my Love, how many Dangers have we passed thro'; you for me, and I for you? And now behold in what baseness I have carried myself for thee. Lady, Love dearly bought is the sweetest. Ey this Time the Trumpets sounded to bring in the King's Supper; so he said unto the Lady, My Love, I will go into the Palace, but after Supper I will come again; for the King knoweth not but that I am a Physician, and hath sent me to cure you: The Lady bid him go; as soon as the King saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? Yes, (quoth *Valentine*) to-morrow your shall hear

hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The King was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle all beset with precious Stones, and caused him to sit down at his own Table. After Supper, *Va'entine* said unto the King, It will be necessary to have a Fire in the Room where my Patient is ; for she will be extream sick all this Night. Well, quoth the King, let all things be done, spare for no Cost. Now *Valentine* takes his way to the Chamber of fair *Clerimond*, with one that carried Wood to make a Fire withal ; which being done, he willed every one to depart, only his 'Squire ; then *Valentine* shut all the Doors and Windows, and said unto *Clerimond* : Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our Pleasure, and casting his Eye aside, he espied the Wooden Horse, and asked her whose it was ? She answered, *Pacolet's* : Then said *Valentine*, let us immediately depart, whereunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with *Pacolet's* Horse, and it being a moon-light Night he mounted him, with *Clerimond* and his 'Squire behind him, and with great Expedition hasted into the City of *Angory* ; being come thither, *Valentine* caused the Gates to be opened, and there was great Joy for the Lady *Clerimond*. The next Morning *Valentine* caused her to be clad in rich Habilliments, and married her. By this time the King knew of her Escape, and being much enraged, he said, Ha ! Thou false Enchanter, hast

hast thou deceived me? If thou ever fall again into my Hands, I will quickly bereave thee of Life: And so he caused Pursuit to be made after *Valentine*, but all in vain, for they



found him not. But here we will leave them, and now I'll proceed to tell you of King *Pe- pin*, how he hasted into *France* to the Succour of *Bertha* his Wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The King of *Britain* not thinking what would happen, strengthened his Forces, and and sent out Proclamation, that all that could bear Arms should assist him into *France*. Hereupon Queen *Bertha*, with her young Son *Charles*, fled to *Lyons* to seek Succour: At the same Time lived a worthy a trusty Earl
of

of *Anjou*, who favouring the Queen, and pitying her Distress, fortified his Castle against the *Britains*, to whom the Queen sent 4000 Horse to keep the Passage. At last the King of *Britain* bid the Earl give him Passage into *France*, but he denied him. Hereupon there was appointed a Band of Soldiers, to lay Siege to *Angiers*, but the Earl kept close within the City, and would not issue out thereof. During the Siege, King *Pepin* came to *Paris*, and there was joyfully received: When the Queen understood he was at *Paris*, she hastened unto him, and when she came before him, in Tears she said: Dear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper. Lady (quoth the King) fear it not. So calling about him his Councillors and Men of War, he made hast to furnish up his Companies, and many were there that voluntarily offered themselves to do the King any Service. By this Time the King of *Britain* heard that King *Pepin* was coming against him with a great Army, which scared him, and not without Cause, for his Friends betrayed him unto King *Pepin*, to save their Estates, and to make their Peace with the King. So one Night as he was lying on his Bed, they siezed him and led him by Force before King *Pepin*, who instantly caused his Head to be smitten off, within the City of *Paris*: Now they that betrayed him thought all was well, but the King siezed all their Estates into his own Hands.

Now

Now was *Valentine* much troubled in Mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from Imprisonment, for he well knew that Castle was not to be won by War or Policy, or by any thing but Treason; at last he resolved on a subtile Plot, and put to Sea twelve Ships, mann'd with 2000 Men, and laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones, and Silks; and thus as Merchants they arrived at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the Shape of a Merchant, setting a rich Crown on his Head, and said unto his Men: Be you all privately armed within the Ships, so that none of you be seen, and if the Sarazens come on board, put them to Death. Then coming towards the Castle Gate with the Crown on his Head, the Porter said, What brings you hither? Friend, said *Valentine*, I am a Merchant, going into *Spain*, and having many rich Commodities on board, I heard say, that I might not pass without a Tribute, on Pain of Death: Said the Porter, I'll go to my Lady, and bring you an Answer; so he went to *Galazy* and told his Message: The Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels on board, she said unto her Seneshal, Go and receive the Tribute due to me of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient Company of Soldiers, lest they should offer you Injury: He did as he was commanded, and coming to the Ships, they found inestimable Gems, insomuch that they were ravish'd therewith; so they ta-

king the Value of the Tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the Ship, set upon them and slew them. Then *Valentine* said unto them, except we go forward in this Enterprize we shall never gain the Castle: Wherefore he caused fifty of his Men to put the Sarazen's Gowns over their Armour, and so lading themselves with Silk and precious Stones, took their way to the Castle. The Porter tied up the Lions, let down the



Draw-Bridge, and thirsting after some Reward, went beyond his Bounds; insomuch that *Valentine* led him to the Ships: Being come, he shewed him their dead Bodies, and said: I will make you like one of these if you give me not
Passage

Passage into the Castle: Sir (said the Porter) I shall do it: Why then (quoth *Valentine*) I will reward thee: Come, said the Porter, bring all these Men whom you have clad in the Habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, and let them enter one by one, which they did; so being entred, the Porter shewed them a secret Postern, which *Valentine* having gotten, caused all the Doors to be set open; then he winded his Horn, at which all those in the Ship hasted to them. Then he entered the Chamber of the Lady *Galazy*, who was astonished thereat; but he said, Lady, fear not, for I have ventur'd the Seas to have a sight of your Royal Person. Then she bad him welcome, and highly feasted him. *Valentine's* Men having entred the Castle, with their Shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in a weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Knight, save my Virginity. Lady, quoth he, fear not, for there is none that dares to tempt any Dishonour towards your Person. By this Time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, and *Valentine* hasted to the Dungeon, broke it open, and cried out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. *Orson* knowing his Voice, replied: Brother you are welcome, how came you hither? *Valentine* said, I am come to set you at Liberty. At these Words the Emperor fell into a Swoon, but *Orson* soon recovered him. Then they came out of the Dungeon in ragged Cloaths, and ill-coloured Faces; but the Christians revelled

in the Castle for the space of seven Days; and *Orson* falling in Love with *Galazy*, after the Death of *Fezon* married her, by whom he had a Son named *Orfayr*, who after had the Empire of *Constantinople*.

These Affairs being thus brought to an End, and Council was called, what was best to be done: At last they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the Enemy: Some said it was fitting that *Haufray* and *Henry* should undertake this Task; but *Haufray* replied, Not we, for we are determin'd to go into *France* to serve our Father. Quoth *Orson*, if you be so resolved, we have small Reason to weep for your Departure, for there is nothing but Treason in you: At these Words *Haufray* and *Henry* were displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolved that the Emperor should take his Rest, and his Son *Orson*, and the *Green Knight* should remain there, to defend the Castle, whilst *Va'entine* and the rest returned to *Angory*. Now we will look into the Treason of *Haufray* and *Henry*, who being come into *France*, laid a Plot to take away the Life of their Father, young *Charles* his Son, with *Bertha* his Queen. Being come to *Paris*, the King royally feasted them, and then demanded what News of the Emperor, *Va'entine*, *Orson*, and the rest? Quoth the Traitors, they were all slain in a Battle at *Angory*, at which the King grew exceeding sorrowful. After this, they poisoned the King and Queen: But little *Charles* was still living, who, as the

Gods

Gods would have it, hapned under the Care of *Myllon Daugler*.

The King and Queen being both treacherously poisoned, the two Traitors seemed to be exceeding sorrowful ; but Duke *Myllon* being a Man of a valiant and couragious Spirit, forthwith called a Council to be holden, wherein he would have crowned young *Charles* King of *France* ; but *Haufray* and *Henry*, by Bribes so corrupted the Lords, that *Charles* was held too young. Hereupon Duke *Myllon* was committed to Prison for standing on the Child's Part, and *Charles* held as a Citching-Boy.

A little after it hapned, that *Haufray* commanded *Charles* to turn a Spit, but the Boy being of a great Spirit, took up the Spit, and fell'd him to the Earth : At this, out steps *Henry*, thinking to have smitten the Child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him such a Box on the Ear, that Blood issued out of his Mouth. Then *Haufray* commanded his Men to lay hold on him, but there came a Knight, which took *Charles* by the Hand, and conveyed him to *Paris*. The Traitors perceiving *Charles* was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Duke *Myllon* told his Wife thereof, who was Sister to *Charles* ; the Lady was very sorrowful, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these Treasons, and forthwith caused Letters to be sent into *Angory*, unto *Valentine*, and the Twelve Peers of *France* : These Letters came first into the Hands of *Valentine*, who

who could not chuse but weep at this Act of Villany. The Lords perceiving his Tears, asked the Cause? He answered, King *Pepin* and the Queen are dead, and as for *Charles*, the accursed Brothers, *Haufray* and *Henry* have chased out of his Dominions, imprison'd Duke *Myllon*, and all that held on young *Charles's* Side: These are the Contents of the Letters, and the Lady that sendeth them, requireth Help to apprehend these Rebels. These Tidings put them to their wits-end, and lying between two Extreames, knew not which way to take; for *Brandiffer* was daily expected with an Army of many Thousands: At last *Valentine* said, E'er To-morrow Night I will set free Duke *Myllon*, or else my Skill shall deceive me; at which they all laughed heartily. *Valentine* departed, and with *Pocolet's* Horse he soon arrived at *Paris*; where by his Art he opened the Gates, and released all the Prisoners; and being shewed the Chamber where Duke *Myllon* was, he entred the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, and said, Sir, I am *Valentine*, who am come to set you free: Then he mounted him on his Horse, and bad him not speak, for he was to pass through the Air. The Duke desired him to pass by the Castle of *Angier*, that he might see his Wife, which he did, and being come to the Lady, she ran and kissed him, demanding of him where he was going? Lady (quoth he) I am going to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the Twelve Peers
of

of France, with an Army, to overthrow *Haufray* and *Henry*, and to succour *Charles*. Having refreshed themselves with Meat, they set forth towards *Hungary*: Being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much astonished at *Valentine's* Art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no Man. Now was *Brandiffer* with his Host come within a Mile of *Angory*, and there planted his Siege: The Citizens hearing thereof, shut up their Gates, drew up their Bridges, and afterwards got on the Wall, lying a Month together without making Resistance. The Emperor hearing that *Brandiffer* had besieged *Angory* with so huge an Army, resolved to leave the strong Castle to the Guard of a Knight: So the Emperor, *Orson*, and the *Green Knight* took Shipping, accompanied with 1000 Soldiers: Being at Sea, they saw a great Fleet of Ships coming towards them, which they found to be a Pagan with 10000 Men, going to the Succour of *Brandiffer*. The Christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that there grew a bloody Battle: Great Valour was shewn on both Sides, but they knew not which way the Victory would incline: At last the Pagan Admiral encountering a Christian Knight, tumbled him overboard: *Orson* standing by him, grew angry; and taking his Axe, struck him dead. This Deed so discouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themselves all that Night, they having lost fifteen large Ships and four hundred

dred Men. Then the Emperor said Lords, let us arm ourselves with such Weapons as here we have taken from the Pagans, which they presently did; but this Advice was fatal, for the Emperor was slain by his own Son *Valentine*, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But they hoisted Sail again, and at last arrived in *Angory*.

After a Months Siege, *Valentine* sent a Defiance to *Brandiffer*, offering him Battle: The Christians divided their Army into ten Squadrons, whereof Duke *Myllon* was their General: The second, *Sampson* of *Orleans*. The third, Earl of *Vandfom*. The fourth, Earl of *Campagne*. The fifth, *Quintine* of *Normandy*. The sixth, Duke of *Burgoyn*. The seventh, the Earl of *Dampmartin*. The Eighth, the Earl of *Ajserve*. The ninth, the Marshal of *Constantinople*. The tenth, *Valentine*, who added Courage to all the rest. Being in Order, they issued out of the City, to assail *Brandiffer*, who had divided his Army into twelve Squadrons, and the Squadron which had the least Commander was a King. At the meeting of these Armies, a certain Pagan that never had been in the Wars, couched his Spear in his Rest, and would be the foremost Man; but *Valentine* to cool his Pride, ran against him and struck him dead. Then they fell to it pell mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly; and the *Indian* King entring the Battle, made a great Slaughter; but *Valentine* missing him, gave him such a Counter-buff, that he unhorsed him.

At

At this present the Christians got the better, and made the Infidels give Ground ; but there came in a Sarazen Captain with 3000 Men, and continued the Battle hotter than before. By this Time King *Lucar* came to the *Indian* King with Succour. Now the Christians began to retire, so that they had been forced to a shameful Flight, had not two valiant Knights, named, *Reynard* of *Province*



and *Myllon* of *Dion*, arrived in *Angory*, with 700 Men at Arms (who lately had come from the Holy Sepulchre, and suffered much Misery) entred the Field : One of them brought into *France* the Daughter of a rich Admiral, called

called *Claridine*, and caused her to be baptized. At their Approach the Pagans were much discomforted, for *Myllon* of *Dyon* at the first Encounter, smote King *Lucar* dead, and at the next another King called *Rubres*, which much amazed *Brandiffer*. At another Wing rushed in *Reynard*, and slew many of them. *Valentine* wondred at these two Knights of Chivalry, and coming towards them said, Lords, you are welcome, I pray what are you? Or by what Chance came you hither? Friend (quoth *Reynard*) we are Lords of *France*, and lately come from the Holy Sepulchre; but hearing of these Wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. Quoth *Valentine*, once again heartily welcome, for *Myllon* *Daugler* is here, and all the Peers of *France*. So they rushed again into the Battle. All this while the *Indian* King had a Spleen against *Valentine* for his last Disgrace; and finding him out, he, accompanied with three other Kings so encountred *Valentine*, that they smote him from his Horse to the Ground; but he quickly recovered, and drawing his Sword, defended himself therewith, but with great Danger: At last Duke *Myllon*, *Sampson*, and *Gervis* came to his Relief, getting a fresh Horse for him: *Valentine* being mounted, made his Course against the *Indian* King again, and striking him down, took away his Shield, which he kept (for he had lost his own.) This ended, Tidings came, that a great Fleet of Sarazens was coming near to the Haven: Hereupon

Hereupon *Va'entine* said, Lords, let us presently go and strengthen the Passages : So *Va'entine* and Duke *Myllon* of *Dyon* went to the Haven ; but these were all Friends and Christians, amongst whom was his Father, the Emperor, of whom you shall hear more.

The Emperor having landed his Men, *Va'entine* saluted him with his Spear in his Rest ; the Emperor (who bare the Shield of a Sarazen unknown) encountred with his Son : At last *Va'entine* ran his Spear quite through his



Father's Body, that he fell down dead. *Va'entine* seeing he was dead, cried, *Montjoy vive Greece.* *Orson* perceiving this, did weep, and said, Brother, there is small Conquest in this, for you have slain your Father : When he heard him say so, he fell from his Horse in an Extasy. To this Lamentation of the two Brothers, came

Reynard

Reynard of Province and *Myllon of Dyon*, to comfort them, saying, Knights, have Patience, for Tears cannot recal him. Alas! said *Valentine*, what have I done? It would be happy for me if Death would take me from this World; I have committed a Faſt deteſtable to God and Man: O what will become of me! My Life I have paſſed away in Troubles; Torments and Cares, and now to add more Sorrow to my Days, I have ſhed the Blood of my dear Father. Brother *Orſon*, take my Sword and cut off my Head, that the Earth may not bear ſo bloody a Butcher. Brother, ſaid *Orſon*, grieve not thus, but repent, and doubt not but you will be forgiven: So comforting him in this Manner, at laſt they got him to his Horſe, and being mounted, he ran through the Pagan Troops ſo furiously, that all they that ſtood in his Way periſhed. Now the Battle began afreſh, and King *Chriſto* made great Havock among the Chriſtians wherever he came: At laſt *Valentine* meeting him, gave him ſuch a Canvaſada, that he pierced his Body quite through. In this Battle Duke *Myllon of Dyon*, and *Reynard of Province*, ventring too far were taken Priſoners; yet notwithstanding the Battle continued hot on both Sides. *Valentine* being careleſs of Life, at laſt met with *Brandiffer*, who encountred each other ſo fiercely, that both fell to the Earth; but *Valentine* recovering himſelf, took the King ſuch a Blow, that he clave his Head. King *Baumant* ſeeing his Brother ſlain,

slain, departed the Field with the Admiral of *Cordes*, and King *Joseth*, who caused a Retreat to be sounded; but the Christians following, slew many Thousands, and others that escaped the Sword, leaped into the Sea and were drowned. The Night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City; next Morning in burying the Dead, there was great Lamentation for the Emperor of *Greece*. Then his Body was royally interred in the City of *Angory*, but *Valentine* could not be comforted. The Pagans being thus twice put to the worst before *Angory*, Duke *Myllon* took his leave of *Valentine*, to return into *France*, saying, *Valentine*, I wish I could return as soon back, as you brought me hither: Friend (said *Valentine*) I would I had never known the Art, for it hath brought nothing but Shame and Vexation on me, and him to an untimely Death that taught it me; so Duke *Myllon* departed. *Valentine* and *Orson* intended to go for *Greece*; but before their Departure they crowned the *Green Knight* King of *Angory*. After taking leave, *Orson* called the fair *Galazy* to him, and said, Love, I know you are with Child by me, yet I cannot wed you, for I have another Wife; but before I go, I will make certain Lands over to you, for your Maintenance: All these Offers she denied, but said, she would go to Sea with him, and after confine me to some Religious House, wherein I may spend the rest of my Days. Agreed. (quoth *Orson*) So he

he took her with him to *Constantinople*. Being come thither, they sent Word to the Empress of their Father's Death, but concealed by whom it was done: The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, and all the City shewed great Joy for their Return. The Empress being at Dinner with her Sons, she said, It must be agreed betwixt you who shall be Emperor. *Orson* replied, It appertaineth not to me to take the first Place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholden to you, not you to me; therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should jointly govern; but *Valentine* continued not long in that state of Dignity, for shortly after, one Morning he called unto *Clerimond*, and said thus unto her: My dear *Clerimond*, hear what I have to say; you know that I have slain my Father, and my Conscience is still so troubled for that Fact, that I am resolved to go on Pilgrimage: Commend me to my Mother, and to my Brother *Orson*, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen Days be passed over, and then give them this Letter; all which the Lady must consent to, although in Tears.



C H A P. XLI.

How Valentine took leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage : How King Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife, how he betrayed Orson, and the Green Knight : How Galeran delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous Lamentations they made : How Bellifant and Clerimond came to know of King Hugon's Treason : How Galeran lost his Head, and how Orson, and the Green-Knight were set free.

THEN Valentine said, Lady, cease your Tears, and give me your Wedding Ring: She having done so, he break it in two Pieces, keeping the one half himself, and giving her the other: Saying, my Love, keep thy half, and whatsoever you hear, believe nothing, till you see this other half, which I possess: At these Words he embraced her, and wept bitterly, so departed, only one Page with him: Having long travelled, at last he came to Rome, there coming into the presence of a Hermit, he confessed the death of his Father; the Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoined him Penance: First, change thy Habit, and go barely clothed, and seven Years lye under the Stairs of thy Palace, without speaking any Words; thou shalt neither Eat or Drink, but of the Scraps that come from
thine

thine own Table; do this, and fear not thy Sins: Sir, said *Valentine*, all this I will do: So after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his Servant; after this he entred into a Wood, feeding upon Roots; and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst Men. *Orson* having read the Letter that *Clerimond* delivered him, wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him:



Brother, cease your lamenting: Alas! said *Orson*, I have great Cause; for this Letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return: Hereat the Lady swowned, and recovering herself, she said, why hath my Love hid his intent

tent from me? But all her sorrow could not call him home again: News was spread through the City, that *Valentine* would never return: *Clerimond* wailed, *Belisant* complained, and *Orson* sighed: Now the Lady *Fezon* hearing *Orson* had got another Lady with Child, she died with grief. Being dead, *Orson* made a Years solemnity of her Funeral, and after married *Galazy*, of whom you have heard before.

Now I will shew you how *Valentine* came back to *Constantinople* in beggarly Weeds, inso-much that he was not known, going from House to House a begging. At last he went into his Brother's Palace, about supper time, and those that waited at the Table, beat him away: *Orson* seeing them so churlish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing all poor Men should be relieved, for my Brother *Valentine's* sake, that so we may hear Tidings of him: After this, they brought him Meat and Wine, but he espying a basket, wherein the Scraps were put, and Eat thereof, which amazed the Beholders: Night being come, the Servants asked *Orson* if he would let that counterfeit abide in his Palace: Ay (quoth *Orson*) for it may be for some Vow which he hath made: Thus abode *Valentine* and made his Bed of Straw under the Stairs. On the Morrow *Orson* passing by, gave him Money, after came his Mother, and his Wife *Cerimond*, and they gave him Money, saying, how can you endure this nakedness? This Night you shall have

have Cloaths provided for you: they being gone, he gave his Mony to two poor Men standing by him, who scoffed at him for his Labour: Next Day at Dinner, they gave him variety of Meats, which he refused, and made Signs for the Alms-Basket: *Orson* to try him further, caused some of the best Meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it; then said *Orson* surely this is some Vow he hath made to the Gods. Thus did *Valentine* remained within the Palace, without being known, that all men thought him dead: In these Days there was a King of *Hungary*, named *Hugon*, who heard that *Valentine* had given over the Empire of *Greece* to his Brother *Orson*, this *Hugon* came to *Constantinople*, and was honourably received. After his arrival, he came to the Lady *Clerimond* and said, I am King of *Hungary* and have no Wife, and for that purpose I am come hither to crave your Love; I know that *Valentine* is dead, or else that he will never return: Dear Lady grant me thy Love, and thou shalt be Queen of *Hungary*, Sir (quoth the Lady) I thank you for your kingly proffer, but to be your Wife, I cannot; for sure my *Valentine* liveth, and for seven Years I will every Day expect his Return: Besides, when I make choice of a Husband, my brother *Orson* and the *Green Knight* must know; for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards *Orson* and demanded of him, if he heard any News from his Brother, great King
(quoth

(quoth *Orson*) no, but he left me a Letter, and certified me, that he is gone to Exile, and beareth about him the half Ring he was married withal; the other half he left with his Wife, charging her, that she believe nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The Gods be his good speed, quoth *Hugon*, for he was a worthy Knight. But one thing quoth *Hugon*, have I more to acquaint you with; I am determined to take a Journey to *Jerusalem*, to visit the holy Shrine, so you would bear me Company. With all my Heart, quoth *Orson*, but let us go to *Angory*, and take with us the *Green Knight*, who is King thereof: It shall be so, quoth *Hugon*: So *Orson* taking leave of his Mother, and his Wife *Galazy*, came to *Angory*, and was received with great Joy. Having feasted there, they took there way to *Jerusalem*: Being come into the City, while they were beholding divers Monuments, *Hugon* stole away from them to the King of *Jury*, and said; I have a Message to deliver worth your Attention. There is newly arrived here two worthy Knights that are your greatest Enemies, for they slew King *Brandffer*, King *Lucar*, and your Brother King of *Indie*: When *Rabestre* heard all that he could say, he was sorry for the death of his Brother, and said to *Hugon*: Can you deliver me these two Knights? Yea said the Traitor, so you will give me their gold Seals: Sir, quoth he, them and much more will I give you: Then hearken, send to the Patriarch's

arch's House, and he will tell you where they are : The King sent out eight hundred armed Men, and found them at Dinner, then they took them and brought them to the King : False Enemies, quoth the King, to our Lives and Religion, my Heart even leapeth for Joy that I have got you, tell me what is your Names? my Name is *Orson*, and this is the *Green Knight*. You are the Men I look for, and there is another called *Valentine*, had I him also, I would use you all alike ; then he caused their seals to be taken away, and given to *Hugon*, and they to be cast into a Dungeon, and be fed only with Bread and Water : Now all this while they knew not what was become of *Hugon* ; for they thought he were slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another Traitor in the City, called *Galeran*, and began thus to salute him ; *Galeran*, my desire is to employ you secretly in a Matter of import, and I will reward thee sufficiently ; Uncle (quoth *Galeran*) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain fair *Clerimond* : True said *Hugon*, therefore let us write a Letter in the Name of *Orson*, and we will seal it with his Seal, and the Letter shall be thus framed.

‘ *Orson*, by the Power of the Gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice renowned Sovereign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my Sister *Clerimond*, greeting. Know this, that many Things are fallen out contrary to our Expectation, which

‘ which are here set down, requiring nothing
 ‘ but patience, Ladies, know that I found my
 ‘ Brother *Valentine* on his death Bed at *Jerusalem*, and a little before his last Gasp,
 ‘ he charged me to salute *Clerimond*, in his
 ‘ Name, and command her, that if ever she
 ‘ Marry again, she take some Prince to her
 ‘ Husband; the Cause why he sent not the
 ‘ half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from
 ‘ him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, *Hugon* wrote another Letter, saying:

‘ Right well-beloved Sister, we have said
 ‘ enough about my Brother *Valentine*, but now
 ‘ we wish you, for the great Beauty where-
 ‘ with you are adorned, first to accomplish the
 ‘ desire of the Dead; secondly, to encrease
 ‘ your Honour, we advise you to match with
 ‘ *Hugon* King of *Hungary*, as you will avoid
 ‘ our displeasure. And no further Authority,
 ‘ we have sealed these Letters with our own
 ‘ Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet Re-
 ‘ turn, for great Wars is fallen between the
 ‘ Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to
 ‘ the Tuition of the Gods.’

These Letters being sealed, *Hugon* gave them to *Galeran* to bear to *Constantinople*, following himself after: By this Means thinking to get the Lady: *Galeran* being in *Constantinople* delivered his Letter to the Lady *Bellisant*, who commanded that he should be highly feasted.

Afterwards she called one to Read them, and *Valentine* lying in the Hall heard the Contents thereof: Being read, the Lady grew exceeding sorrowful for the Death of *Valentine*, but especially the Lady *Clerimond*, pittiously lamenting his Misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst Women am I! Alas *Valentine*, why went I not with thee, to see thy Body laid up safe in the Earth? Unkind Brother and the *Green Knight*, why are you two such Enemies, as to wish me to Marriage so soon after *Valentine's* Death, seeing I have lost such a Noble, Magnanimous, and loving Knight, the Mirror of Chivalry, the Rose of Honour, the Example of Courtesy, and the Patron of Truth? Death, hast thou not one Dart left to shoot at this poor Breast? for seeing my Life is nothing but sorrow, I will never have another Husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my Days: All this did *Valentine* behold, which he pitied; but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence? *Bellissant* seeing *Clerimond* thus violent, said: Daughter, be patient, he was my Son, and I am sorrow for him at my Heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back, therewith I pass it over, and rather think on what your Brother, and my Son *Orson* doth advise you unto: Good Mother (quoth the Lady) say no more, for I shall never Marry, and therewithal went weeping to her Chamber, and *Valentine* lay under the Stairs, musing how these Treasons should come about. Some few Days after, King *Hugon* came to
Constantinople

Constantinople, and was received with great honour; but *Cerimond* shewed him no favour: Being there, he said unto the Empress: You understand of the Death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: But it is agreed upon, that I shall marry the Lady: Sir, quoth *Clerimond*, I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this Treason *Valentine* heard; but in the End, the Matter was so urged, that *Hugon* had the Lady, which much encreased his Joys, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made Answer to him thus: *Valentine* get thee out of the City, and without the Gates is a Pilgrim, put on his Weeds, having them on, get thee to thy Palace, and there before all comers reveal the Treason practised against thy Love, for in this disguise thou canst not be known: *Valentine* coming to the Court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, and amongst them was the Traitor *Hugon*, even he that uttered such Reproachful Words against *Valentine*. Now *Valentine* came to *Bellisant*, saying: Lady I beseech you shew me the Wife of *Valentine*, I would fain do a Message to her: Would thou said the Lady, I am she that thou desirest to see: Then thus, I have lately seen thy Love *Valentine*, that sendeth Salutations, willing me to say, that within three Days he will be with you. Pilgrim (quoth the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest, for I heard my Love is Dead; Lady (quoth the Pilgrim)

believe it not, for I protest to deliver my Body to Death, if it be not true what I have said: *Hugon* hearing these Words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his Horse, and never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were amazed at the Pilgrims Tale, and offered to feast him, but he would not, only he said to them: Ladies, Pardon me, I pray, for I have certain Companions in the Town, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your Pardon: Yet *Clerimond* would gratify him for his News, giving him Money, which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Servants. Presently after, it was demanded, what was become of King *Hugon*? A Damosel standing by, said, I saw him just now take Horse, but where he is I know not.

Upon these Words *Galeran* came in; and they asked him what was become of his Uncle *Hugon*? who making no Reply, *Bellissant* grew enraged, and said, you shall not escape till you have related the Treason *Hugon* hath practised against us. Then *Galeran* said, Lady have Mercy on me, and I shall tell you all. Say on, I Pardon thee: My Uncle is guilty of Treason, and has sold to the Pagans, the Emperor, *Orson*, and the *Green Knight*. Which made the Assembly very sorrowful, but *Galeran* was presently hanged. Then *Valentine* leaving the Habit of a Pilgrim, return'd again to the Palace; *Clerimond* espying him, said, poor Man! Where have you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said I will not Marry?

Marry? *Valentine* replied not at all, but left her; yet she not contented at his dejection; caused a costly Quilt to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused.

King *Jury* having *Orson* and the *Green Knight* in hold, caused them to be brought before him, and said unto them: Lords, you see, you are at my Mercy, wherefore I vow you shall never escape with Life, except you will resign back unto me the City of *Angory*. *Orson* replied, we will never consent hereunto, except thou give King *Hugon* unto us; the King said unto them, speak nothing of him, for he is the Traitor that delivered you into my Hands, and he hath your Seals: *Orson* and the *Green Knight* marvelled much thereat, and Swore they would be revenged on him.

Now it fell out, that these Prisoners were content to yield to the King's command, and so returned to *Constantinople*: Being come home, *Clerimond* told him, that she had heard Tidings of *Valentine*, which rejoiced *Orson*, who lying with his Wife that Night, got a Son called *Morant*, who after ruled *Angory*. Not long after *Orson* raised an Host of Men to go for *Angory*, which when *Hugon* heard, he offered him the same City, and four Horse-load of Gold, and if any there durst call him Traitor (*Orson* excepted) he would fight with him; the *Green Knight* accepted his Challenge; so armed themselves, the *Green Knight* came first into the List. All things set in order,

order, they encountered each other with their Spears, next with their Swords, at last the *Green Knight* gave *Hugon* such a stroke on his Helm, that he cut part of his Head, even off



at his Shoulders; so that he fell into a Swoon, thus was the *Green Knight* Conqueror; *Hugon* reviving again, desired a Confessor, and unfolding the Treason, died in the Place; *Orson* nevertheless caused his Body to be sumptuously interr'd; at last *Hugons* Treason being blown abroad, they tendered the City to the Emperor *Orson*; This being ended, they returned into *Constantinople*; but *Clerimond* marvelled she heard not of *Valentine*.

C H A P.

C H A P. XLII.

How at the End of seven Years, Valentine died in the Palace of Constantinople, and how Orson turned Hermit.

AT the End of 7 Years, *Valentine* fell into a mortal Disease, whereof he died. Before his Death an Angel appeared to him, saying, *Valentine* thy Glass is run, for within four Hours thou shalt die : Whereat he greatly rejoiced, making Signs for Pen, Ink, and Paper ; when he had it, he wrote, that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the Treason ; after putting to it his Name, he closed up the Paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept : Shortly after he laid him down and died. When *Orson* saw that he was dead, he was troubled in Mind. The poor Man being dead, held a Letter in his Hand, which *Orson* would have taken out, but he could not, then came *Clerimond*, and as soon as she laid hold thereon, the Hand opened it self. *Clerimond* breaking open the Letter, and knowing the half Ring, said, Lords, we shall hear News of *Valentine* ; so a Secretary was called to Read it, at the Reading hereof great Lamentations was made, but especially by *Clerimond*, who falling on the Body, said : Alas I have lost all my Joy, Comfort, and
Hopes

Hopes, for that my Love should die so near my Person, and I not know of it: Now great Preparations was made for his Funeral Rites; he was interred in great Magnificence in *Constantinople*; *Clerimond* afterward betook her to a single Life. Thus having shown the Death of *Valentine*, and what became of *Clerimond*: Let us return to *Orson*, who ruled the Empire of *Constantinople* seven Years, and by his second Wife *Galazy*, he had a Son named *Morant*, who afterwards was King of *Angory*.

After seven Years were expired, *Galazy* died, for whom *Orson* was exceeding sorrowful, and in the End, betook him to the Woods, feeding on Bread and Roots. It happened one Night. that he saw a Vision, it seemed to him more glorious than his Tongue could utter. After this Vision he awaked, and being astonished hereat, with Tears he came to the *Green Knight* and said: Sir, I see the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to resign my Estate and Children unto you: I desire you would see them well educated, that they may be fit to govern such a People, for I will spend the rest of my Days in solitary Contemplation: When the *Green Knight* heard these Words he wept bitterly; but *Orson* recomforted him, saying: Weep not, but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust withal. So taking his leave of the *Green Knight*, he took his way towards

towards a Wood, where he spent the remainder of his Days: The *Green Knight* after his death carefully governed his Children, that they carefully spent their time on Earth, and followed their Father to his Grave.

F I N I S.



T H E

CONTENTS.

C H A P. I.

HOW King Pepin banished his Queen Bertha; and how he gave his Sister Bellifant in Marriage to Alexander, Emperor of Constantinople.

10 JU 52

C H A P. II.

How the Arch-priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperor, his Lord and Master, in making Love to fair Bellifant the Empress; and what evil followed thereupon. The Arch-priest having received a repulse of Bellifant, to save his own Honour, practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.

C H A P. III.

How the Arch-Priest put on the Habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress Bellifant, who was lately banished. How Bellifant, in her banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine and Orson, and how she lost them.

C H A P. IV.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Bear that bore away one of the Children.

CHAP. V.

How, By the Counsel of the Arch-Priest, new Customs, and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople; and how the Treason came to light. How the Emperor, by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin, to see the Combat fought between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant.

CHAP. VI.

How the Merchant and High-Priest encountered at the Place appointed, about the clearing the Lady Bellifant, and what a glorious Victory did be-tide the Merchant. How King Pepin, after the Combat, returned into France; and after sailed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

CHAP. VII.

How King Pepin besieged Rome; and how Valentine justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved and won again from the Sarazens.

CHAP. VIII.

How Hanfray and Henry, repined at the Love the King did shew towards Valentine.

CHAP. IX.

The CONTENTS.

C H A P IX.

How Valentine conquered his Brother Orson (the wild Man in the Forest of Orleans) and afterwards departed from the Forest, with Orson, towards Orleans, wherein King Pepin was resided.

C H A P. X.

How Haufray and Henry took Counsel together, to Murther Valentine, in the Chamber of Eglantine. And how Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin, for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.

C H A P. XI.

How divers Knights arrived at Aquitain, at a solemn Just there holden to bear away the Love of the Beauteous Lady Fezon. How Haufray and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.

C H A P. XII.

How Orson and Grygar fought together, and how Orson returning victor, caused Grygar to Confess the Treason, who was after banged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon, &c.

C H A P. XIII.

The CONTENTS.

C H A P XIII.

How Orson encountered the Green Knight, and what followed thereon; also how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

C H A P. XIV.

How Valentine took Advice and sent Orson on the Morrow, to fight the Green Knight; and how Orson overcame him.

C H A P. XV.

How Orson having conquered the Green Knight, Valentine caused him to be christened, and sending him to King Pepin, &c.

C H A P. XVI.

How King Pepin came to know that Valentine and Orson were his Nephews; and how the Green Knight submitted himself according to his Promise.

C H A P XVII.

How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to bear these Tidings; how he found Constantinople besieged by the Soldan of Egypt; how the Green Knight justed with two Sarazens and overcame them; of the Battle that was fought, and the Armies entring the City.

C H A P XVIII.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP XVIII.

How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle, wherein fair Clerimond was ; and how by the Brazen-Head, they had knowledge of their Parents.

CHAP XIX.

How (when as Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) Clerimond bewailed the Love of Valentine: And how he justed for the Entrance, and overcame the Seneshal.

CHAP XX.

How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and he questioned with the Brazen-Head, which told him from whence he was descended.

CHAP XXI.

How the Giant Ferragus had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and Valentine, by the Means of one Pacolet a Dwarf and an Enchanter.

CHAP XXII.

How Pacolet hereupon made another expeditious Journey into Portugal, to see the Lady Bellifant, Valentine's Mother ; his return back, and the News that he brought.

CHAP XXIII.

The CONTENTS.

C H A P. XXIII.

How Valentine and Orson were betrayed by the Treachery of Ferragus; and how he committed them to Prison, with their woeful Lamentation.

C H A P. XXIV.

How Pacolet the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

C H A P. XXV.

How by Art Pacolet set free Valentine and Orson from the Prison of Ferragus, and conducted them, with their Mother and fair Clerimond.

C H A P. XXVI.

How Valentine and Orson escaped the Castle of Ferragus, and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitaine.

C H A P. XXVII.

How King Ferragus assembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon Valentine, and his Sister Clerimond, and how he followed them into Aquitaine.

C H A P. XXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitaine was taken Prisoner in the Battle by Ferragus, and how Orion set him free by the help of Pacolet.

C H A P. XXIX.

The CONTENTS.

C H A P. XXIX.

How Orson tryed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he Married her.

C H A P. XXX.

How Ferragus the Giant strengthened his Forces by the Aid of King Trompart, and the Enchanter Adrimain.

C H A P. XXXI.

Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to Valentine her Son, before his farewell into Constantinople, and what Speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

C H A P. XXXII.

How Valentine and the Green Knight were taken-Prisoners in the Battle of Constantinople, by the Soldan Moradin and his Men.

C H A P. XXXIII.

How Pacolet by Enchantment, delivered Valentine and the Green Knight out of the Bondage of the Soldan; and how Pacolet couzened the Soldan when he had him upon his Horse, and instead of carrying him to Portugal, brought him to Constantinople where he was hanged.

C H A P. XXXIV.

The CONTENTES.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to succour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed Pacolet, and how the King of Indie, caused King Trompart's Head to be struck off: And how he would have married with Clerimond; and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain in the Shape of a Woman: and how Ferragus was slain; and how Orson, and the Duke went with their Army to Constantinople, to succour the Emperor; and how Orson led a'long with him his Mother; and how all the Pagans were slain before Constantinople, and how the Emperor received his Son, and his Wife Bellifant.

CHAP. XXXV.

How King Pepin took leave of the Emperor and returned into France, and how Orson went along with him. How Garnier fainting, left the Knife in the Bed. And how Orson claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him; and it was (by the twelve Peers of France) granted. And how Valentine, in seeking Clerimond, arrived at Antioch, and Fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon. And how Valentine after the Conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of Antioch, and all his Land to be baptized; and of the Lawless Love of the Queen Rosamond. And how the King of Antioch

The CONTENTS.

Antioch was put to Death for Renouncing his Mahometry, by King Brandiffer, his Wifes Father. And how the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by Brandiffer.

C H A P. XXXVI.

How Clerimond after the Year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of Indie. And of Lucar that would revenge the death of his Father King Trompart, upon the King of Indie. How King Lucar in the City of Esclariana wedded Rozamond, the fair Daughter of Brandiffer. How Valentine departed from Esclardy, to breath out Defiance: Of the Answer he brought from the Indian King. How Rozamond found a way to be taken, and led unto the Indian King. How King Lucar caused Brandiffer to stay with him, and sent Valentine into Angory against King Pepin: How King Pepin took the City of Angory.

C H A P. XXXVII.

How Valentine returned back to Indie, after the Battle, and carried with him the dead Body of King Murgalant: How he heard Tidings of his Father: How Pacolet freed the Indian King, and left Brandiffer in Prison. How King Lucar caused the hundred Men that watched the Indian, to be drawn to Death at Horses Tails. How Valentine and Pacolet departed secretly out of his Host, and went to Angory,

The CONTENTS.

Angory, and of the *Vision of King Pepin* :
*How he went into the Holy-Land with the
Twelve Peers of France, and what happened :*
*How Haufray and Henry betrayed their Father
King Pepin and the Twelve Peers of France.*
*How Caliph of Bendas made Truce between
the Indian, Lucar, Brandiffer, and how he
was trapped in his own Net.*

C H A P. XXXVIII.

*How Valentine and Pacolet came before the Cas-
tle: How Pacolet raised up the Devil, to ask
his Counsel about the taking of the Castle: How
Brandiffer brought the Twelve Peers of France
into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them :
How he besieged the City of Angory. And how
Brandiffer having knowledge that Lucar was
Captive in Angory, proposed to Valentine, to
deliver him up on a sufficient Ransome.*

C H A P. XXXIX.

*How Myllon Daugler (who was taken for the King
of France) was delivered out of Prison in lieu
of King Lucar: How Valentine and the Duke
of Myllon issued out of Angory, and won the
Battle from the Sarazens: How King Pepin
was delivered in change for the King of Indie's
Marshal: How King Pepin left Angory, and
returned into France, to succour his Wife.*

C H A P. XL.

*How Valentine under the Shape of a Physician,
went into Indie, to see and speak with Cleri-
mond*

The CONTENTS.

mond ; how he rode away with her. *How the King of Britain was given to King Pepin by Treason. How Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father and all the rest of the Prisoners. How the Emperor, Orson and the Green Knight kept a strong Garrison in the Castle. How Haufray and Henry caused their Father to be put to Death. How the Emperor of Greece, Orson, and the Green Knight left the Castle, and came to the Succour of Valentine in Angory : How the Christians issued out of the City of Angory, and gave Battle to the Sarazens. How Valentine ignorantly slew his Father. How Myllon Daugler returned into France, and Valentine and Orson into Greece.*

C H A P. XLI.

How Valentine took leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage : How King Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife, how he betrayed Orson, and the Green Knight : How Galeran delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous Lamentations they made : How Bellisant and Clerimond came to know of King Hugon's Treason : How Galeran lost his Head, and how Orson, and the Green-Knight were set free.

C H A P. XLII.

How at the End of seven Years, Valentine died in the Palace of Constantinople, and how Orson turned Hermit.

BOOKS printed for A. Bettesworth and C.
Hitch, J Osborn, and J. Hodges.

THE first Book of Architecture, by *Andrea Palladio*, Translated out of the *Italian*; with an Appendix touching Doors and Windows, by *Pr. Le Meut*, Architect to the *French King*. Translated into *English* by *Godfrey Richards*. The Whole illustrated with above seventy Copper Cuts. Also Rules and Demonstrations, with several Designs for the Framing of any Manner of Roofs, either above Pitch, or under Pitch, whether Square or Bevel; never before published: By that ingenious Architect, *Mr. William Pope* of *London*. With Designs of Floors of Variety of small Pieces of Wood Inlaid, lately made in the Palace of *Somerset-House*; a Curiosity never practised before in *England*. The Twelfth Edition, corrected and enlarged; with a New Model of the Cathedral of *St. Paul, London*; curiously engraved, as it is now rebuilt. Price bound 4 s.

II. *Sir Samuel Moreland's Vade Mecum*: Or, the Necessary Pocket Companion. Being a Book of Accounts ready cast up, whereby the greatest Stranger to Arithmetick may find the Price of any Commodity, from one Farthing to twenty Shillings. With several Tables of Interest, and Tables for casting up Nobles, Marks, and Guineas; with several other Things highly necessary for all Merchants, Tradesmen and others. The fourteenth Edition, corrected; with Additions. Price bound 2 s.

III. The

A Catalogue of B O O K S.

III. The Country Builder's Estimator: Or, the Architect's Companion. For Estimating of new Buildings, or Repairing of Old: In a concise easy Method entirely New; and of Use to Gentlemen, or their Stewards; Master-Workmen, Artificers, or any Person that Undertakes or Letts-out Work. Wherein the several Artificers Works concerned in Building, and every Article belonging to each of them are fully, distinctly, and separately considered; and the Prices thereof inserted, not only of the Workmanship, but of the Materials also, and what Quantity of Materials are required to the Performance thereof; with the Manner of taking Dimensions, Measuring, and Valuing the same. To which is added, several New Tables, (never before published) for the Valuing of Oak, or any other Timber that is squared and cut to any Scantling or Size fit for Building. By *William Salmon Jun. Carpenter, of Colchester, in Essex.* Price 1 s. 6d.

IV. The Youth's Guide to the Latin Tongue, or an Explication of *Propria quæ maribus, Quæ Genus, and As in præsentî.* Wherein the Rules are made plain and easy to the Capacity of Young Learners, by a new verbal Translation, the Examples declined, and the Sense illustrated with useful Notes and Observations from the best Grammarians, by *Thomas Dyche, Master of the Free-School at Stratford.* Price 1 s. 10 JU 52

Or,
ing
n a
of
Mas-
that
the
ild-
of
con-
not
ate-
are
with
fur-
ad-
pub-
ther
ant-
Sal-
ssex.

gue,
bus,
rein
the
rbal
the
Ob-
by
l at